

ALAN CHAMBERLAIN
JANE ZEMIRO





COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Copyright in this work is owned by Cengage Learning Australia (“the work”). A condition of purchase of this electronic version of the work is that you agree to respect the copyright in the work, abide by the Copyright Act 1968 and specifically agree not to transfer, sell, assign, misuse, copy or transmit an electronic or other version of the work to any third party.

Please note: This product is accompanied by a licence (single user, network or adoption) governing the terms and conditions of its use.

This is a legal agreement between the you, (the “Customer”) and Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited (ABN 14 058 280 149) (the “Licensor”) which provides the terms and conditions of this non-exclusive licence and the limited warranty for the Product. Use of the Product indicates an acknowledgement that the Customer has read and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. If you do not agree to these terms and conditions, return the Product to the place of purchase within 15 days of the date of purchase (with proof of purchase) for a full refund

1. Licence Grant

You do not receive title to the Product. Copyright in the Product (which includes all images, photographs, video, animations, audio, music and text incorporated in the Product, including all of the accompanying printed material) is owned by the Licensor and/or its suppliers and is protected by Australian copyright laws. The Licensor grants you a non-exclusive licence to use the Product subject to the restrictions and terms set out in this Agreement.

2. A Licence allows you to:

Use the Product on your computer. The Customer represents that they shall in no way place the Product in the public domain or in any way compromise our copyright in the Material. You agree to take reasonable steps to protect our copyright.

3. You may not:

Alter, modify, translate, reverse engineer, decompile, or adapt the software or create derivative works based on the Product. Make further copies by any means technological, electronic, digital whatsoever without the written permission of the Licensor. Rent or transfer all or any part of your rights under this Agreement. Remove or alter any copyright or other proprietary notice or label attached to the software.

4. Termination

Any failure to comply with the terms and conditions of this agreement will result in the automatic termination of this licence. Upon termination of this licence for any reason, the Customer must destroy or return to the Licensor all copies of the software and accompanying documentation.

5. Warranties

To the extent permitted by law, the Licensor’s liability for any breach of the warranty or any term implied by law into this licence is limited to the lowest cost of replacing the goods, acquiring equivalent goods or having the goods repaired.



ROYAUME-UNI

PAYS-BAS

ALLEMAGNE

La Manche

Lille

BELGIQUE

Nord-Pas-de-Calais-Picardie

LUXEMBOURG

Rouen

Normandie

Seine

Île-de-France

Alsace-Champagne-Ardenne-Lorraine

Strasbourg

Bretagne

Rennes

Pays de la Loire

Nantes

Loire

Centre-Val de Loire

Orléans

Dijon

Bourgogne-Franche-Comté

SUISSE

Océan Atlantique

Aquitaine-Limousin-Poitou-Charentes

Bordeaux

Auvergne-Rhône-Alpes

Lyon

ITALIE

Garonne

Rhône

Languedoc-Roussillon-Midi-Pyrénées

Toulouse

Provence-Alpes-Côte d'Azur

Marseille

MONACO

ESPAGNE

ANDORRE

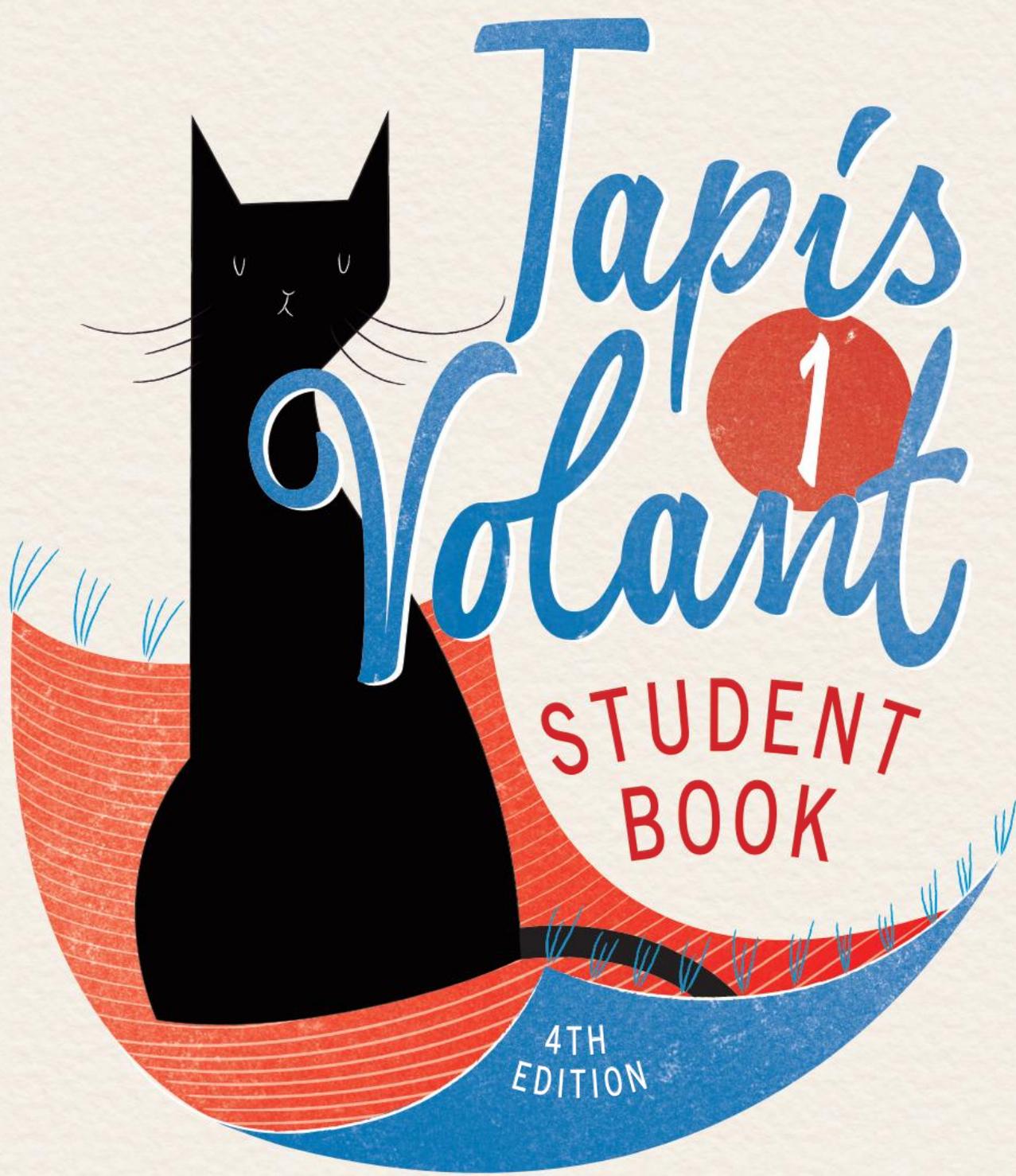
Mer Méditerranée

Corse

Ajaccio

N

0 50 100 150 200 km



ALAN CHAMBERLAIN
JANE ZEMIRO

Tapis Volant 1
4th Edition
Alan Chamberlain
Jane Zemiro

Publishing editors: Danielle Dominguez / Catriona McKenzie
Project editor: Robyn Beaver
Editor: Ingrid De Baets
Cover image: Studio Pounce Creative
Cover design: Studio Pounce Creative
Cover art direction: Danielle Maccarone
Text design: Aisling Gallagher and Regine Abos
Permissions researcher: Helen Mammides
Production controller: Renee Tome and Emma Roberts
Typeset by: Lisa Howard

Any URLs contained in this publication were checked for currency during the production process. Note, however, that the publisher cannot vouch for the ongoing currency of URLs.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to thank Audrey Zemiro and the reviewers for their assistance with this book.



© 2017 Cengage Learning Australia Pty Limited

Copyright Notice

This Work is copyright. No part of this Work may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission of the Publisher. Except as permitted under the *Copyright Act 1968*, for example any fair dealing for the purposes of private study, research, criticism or review, subject to certain limitations. These limitations include: Restricting the copying to a maximum of one chapter or 10% of this book, whichever is greater; providing an appropriate notice and warning with the copies of the Work disseminated; taking all reasonable steps to limit access to these copies to people authorised to receive these copies; ensuring you hold the appropriate Licences issued by the Copyright Agency Limited ("CAL"), supply a remuneration notice to CAL and pay any required fees. For details of CAL licences and remuneration notices please contact CAL at Level 15, 233 Castlereagh Street, Sydney NSW 2000, Tel: (02) 9394 7600, Fax: (02) 9394 7601
Email: info@copyright.com.au
Website: www.copyright.com.au

For product information and technology assistance,
in Australia call **1300 790 853**;
in New Zealand call **0800 449 725**

For permission to use material from this text or product, please email
aust.permissions@cengage.com

National Library of Australia Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

Chamberlain, Alan, author.

Tapis volant 1. Student book / Alan Chamberlain, Jane Zemiro.

4th edition
9780170393720 (paperback)
Includes index.
For secondary school age.

French language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.
French language--Study and teaching (Secondary)--English speakers.
French language--Pronunciation by foreign speakers--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.
French language--Pronunciation by foreign speakers--Study and teaching (Secondary)--English speakers.
French language--Writing--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English.
French language--Writing--Study and teaching (Secondary)--English speakers.

Zemiro, Jane, author.

Cengage Learning Australia

Level 7, 80 Dorcas Street
South Melbourne, Victoria Australia 3205

Cengage Learning New Zealand

Unit 4B Rosedale Office Park
331 Rosedale Road, Albany, North Shore 0632, NZ

For learning solutions, visit **cengage.com.au**

Printed in China by China Translation & Printing Services.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 20 19 18 17 16

PREFACE

Welcome aboard the magic carpet for a trip around France and the French-speaking world! As your journey unfolds, you will meet young people in France and other francophone (French-speaking) people in Europe, Africa, North America and the Pacific. You will learn about their daily lives and their culture, and compare their experiences with your own.

During your voyage, you will develop the skills needed to understand, speak, read and write simple, useful and up-to-date French.

In many parts of the world it is quite normal for people to speak two, three or more languages. Learning *any* language other than your own is an important cultural experience. However, there are a number of good reasons for choosing French.

More than 270 million people speak French on five continents. French is the ninth most widely spoken language in the world and the third most widely used language on the Internet. It is also the second most widely learnt foreign language in the world, with almost 120 million students and 900 000 teachers. You are not alone!

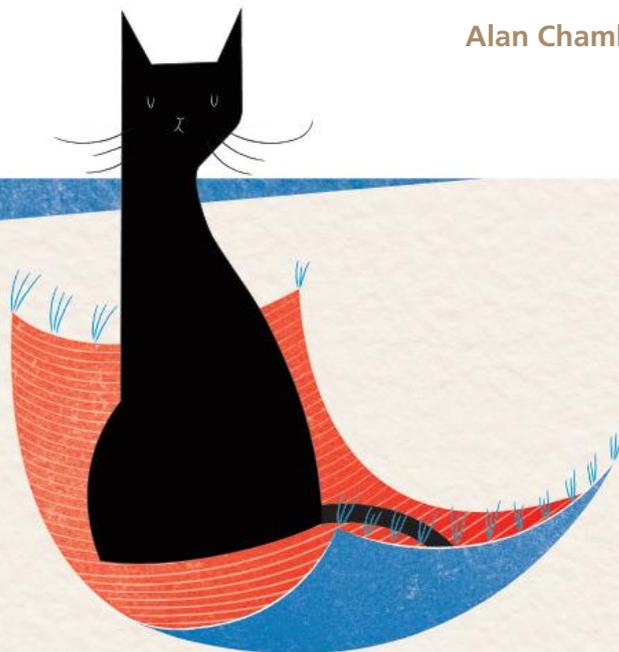
The Organisation internationale de la Francophonie (OIF) has 58 French-speaking member nations. So, if you learn French, it won't be difficult to find people to talk to in these countries.

French is the international language of fashion, the visual arts, dance, architecture and cooking – *entrée*, *dessert*, *soufflé*, *croissant*, *mayonnaise*, *gâteau* and *casserole* are all French words you already know. This means that French vocabulary is not hard to learn: almost one-third of English and French words are the same or very similar.

We hope you enjoy *Tapis Volant*. This Student Book is supported by the Workbook, which gives you lots of practice in listening, reading, writing, vocabulary and grammar. The *Tapis Volant* program also provides audio and video resources and online digital activities.

Bon voyage ! (Don't forget to feed the cat.)

Alan Chamberlain and Jane Zemiro



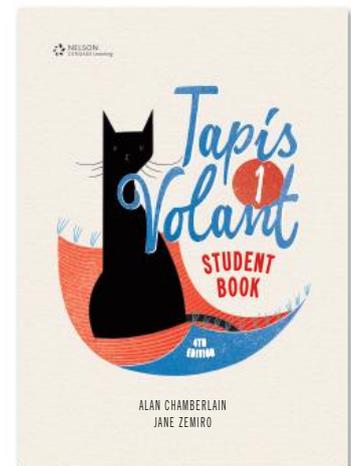
ABOUT THE SERIES: *TAPIS VOLANT 1 AND 2*, 4TH EDITION

Tapis Volant 1 and 2, 4th Edition is a fully revised edition of this market-leading French series. The series has been carefully developed following the guidelines of The Australian Curriculum: French and designed to fulfil the requirements by states and territories' subsequent implementation.

The *Tapis Volant* series is intended for level 1 (Years 7–8 or 9) and level 2 (Years 9–10) beginners, who start in Year 7. The digital materials and the extra materials in the *Tapis Volant* Teacher Toolkit may offer some extension for learners who are continuing their studies of French from primary school or have background knowledge of the French language.

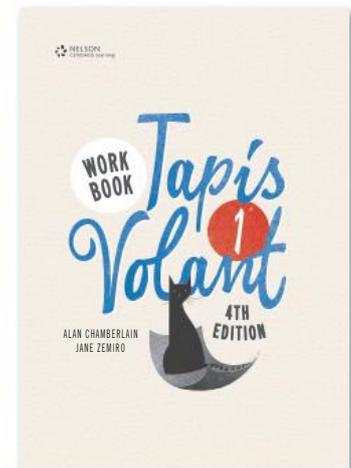
Student Book

The Student Book in each level is clearly structured and well paced, and allows for meaningful and fun language and culture learning, reflecting and comparing. It provides a variety of tasks and texts, which develop and consolidate both productive and receptive skills, interwoven with many opportunities for the development of General Capabilities and Cross-curriculum priorities. It includes lively cartoon spreads, photos, reading passages and multiple occasions for intercultural reflection.



Workbook with USB

The Workbook offers a wide variety of exercises, drills and tasks to consolidate and revise the language and culture encountered in the Student Book. The USB contains the audio tracks to complete the listening exercises. Engaging videos (with or without subtitles) are also provided for additional language practice.



Audio Pack USB

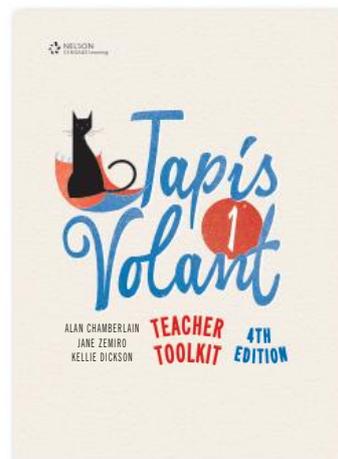
The Audio Pack USB is intended for teachers' use in class. It provides recordings of the dialogues in the Student Book and oral texts for listening comprehension activities in the Workbook. The audio material for the end-of-unit listening tests is also included. All audio is recorded by native speakers of French.



Teacher Toolkit with USB

The Teacher Toolkit includes:

- a full-colour wraparound version of the Student Book with handy notes on how to use the course materials, extension activities and curriculum connections
- Workbook answers and audio transcripts
- a USB with unit tests and answers, worksheets, grammar PowerPoint presentations and curriculum grids.



NelsonNetBook*

The NelsonNetBook is an online version of the Student Book, with interactive links. It can be personalised by adding notes, weblinks and audio recordings, and can be used to share comments in class. Clickable 'hotspots' provide access to a variety of multimedia resources.

Tapis Volant website on NelsonNet*

NelsonNet is your portal to a wealth of additional resources for students and teachers. Each level of *Tapis Volant* offers a student website and a teacher website.

The **student website** includes:

- audio tracks from the Student Book
- short videos by native speakers of French that model the key language (with or without subtitles)
- worksheets providing support for speaking practice
- interactives
- end-of-unit quizzes.

The **teacher website** includes all the material from the student website, plus:

- PDFs of the Student Book
- grammar PowerPoint presentations.

Nelson Languages website – free extra resources!

This freely accessible website offers a variety of engaging interactive resources. These resources have been written specifically for the course. Go to nelsonnet.com.au and click on 'Free resources'.



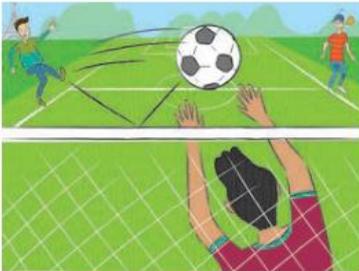
* Go to nelsonnet.com.au. Please note that complimentary access to NelsonNet and the NelsonNetBook is only available to teachers who use the accompanying student textbook and workbook as a core educational resource in their classroom. Contact your Education Consultant for information about access codes and conditions.

CONTENTS

UNITÉ 1

Bienvenue en France !

2



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Greeting and introducing people
- Saying your nationality
- Welcoming to your country
- Apologising
- Expressing surprise and disappointment

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *a* and *à*
- Silent letters
- The alphabet
- Pronouns *je, tu, vous*
- Definite articles *le, la, les* + gender of nouns

ESPACE CULTURE

- French passion for football
- Green spaces in Paris
- French icons (e.g. Eiffel Tower)
- History of French and English words
- Dogs and cafés (*En France*)

UNITÉ 2

C'est beau, Paris

16



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Greeting friends and adults
- Responding to greetings
- Asking how someone is
- Expressing surprise
- Offering someone a drink
- Accepting and refusing an offer

OUTILS LANGUE

- Accents
- Irregular verb *être*
- Negative verb forms
- Adjectives of nationality (masculine and feminine)
- Indefinite articles *un, une, des*

ESPACE CULTURE

- The beginning of the school year in France (*En France*)
- French cafés and restaurants
- Physical contact in greetings in France
- Using *tu* and *vous*

MISE AU POINT
Unités 1 & 2

28

VOL DE DÉCOUVERTE 1
Le français dans le monde

30

UNITÉ 3

Ça, c'est ma famille

32



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Talking about families
- Numbers 1–20
- Talking about age
- Expressing possession
- Saying you like / don't like doing something

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *oi, r, qu*
- Irregular verb *avoir*
- Verb changes (*tu / vous*)
- Omission of *ne*
- Possessive adjectives *mon, ma, mes* etc.

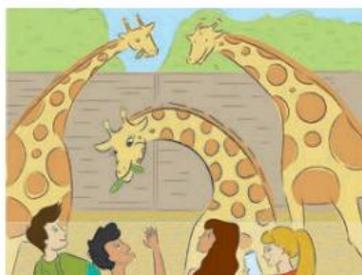
ESPACE CULTURE

- Types of family in France
- French family documents
- Family names in France
- Origins of French names
- Children's surnames (*En France*)

UNITÉ 4

Au parc zoologique

46



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Talking about and describing animals
- Talking about animals in zoos
- Expressing opinions
- Reading and writing notices for lost pets

OUTILS LANGUE

- Liaison
- Nouns: range of plural forms
- Adjectives: different masculine and feminine forms
- Regular verbs ending in *-er*
- Ways of asking a question in French

ESPACE CULTURE

- Biozones in the Parc Zoologique de Paris
- Pets in France
- Protecting abandoned animals
- The pet cemetery in Asnières

MISE AU POINT
Unités 3 & 4

60

UNITÉ 5

Bon appétit !

62



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Ordering food and drinks in a restaurant
- Expressing likes and dislikes
- Talking about being hungry
- Accepting and refusing offers of food and drink
- Expressing thanks for a meal
- Proposing a toast

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *ou*, *eu* and *au / eau / ô*
- Partitive articles *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*
- Prepositions *à* and *de* in front of nouns
- Verb + infinitive (e.g. *j'aime manger*, *j'aime boire*)

ESPACE CULTURE

- Daily meals and menus in France
- French preferences in food: fact and fiction
- *La semaine du goût*
- 'Doggy bags' (*En France*)

UNITÉ 6

C'est la fête !

76



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Asking for and giving dates (days of the week, months)
- Numbers 21–60
- Talking about festivals and calendar dates
- Talking about birthdays and 'name days'
- Talking about music and performance

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *j* and *g*
- Interrogative pronoun *quel/le(s) ?*
- Interrogative words *où ?*, *quand ?*, *pourquoi ?*
- Irregular verb *aller*
- Pronouns *nous* and *on*

ESPACE CULTURE

- French festivals and celebrations: traditional, religious, historical, seasonal, cultural, local
- Traditional French calendars (*En France*)

MISE AU POINT
Unités 5 & 6

90

VOL DE DÉCOUVERTE 2
Les régions de France

92

UNITÉ 7

En classe, on travaille

96



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Talking about school subjects
- Asking and saying what subjects you take
- Talking about marks in different subjects
- Asking and answering questions in class
- Giving and following classroom instructions
- Asking and giving the time

OUTILS LANGUE

- Nasal vowels
- Imperative forms of regular -er verbs
- Present tense of refl xive -er verbs
- Imperative forms of refl xive -er verbs

ESPACE CULTURE

- The French secondary school system (calendar, timetable, marking system, dress code at school)
- Canteen menus in French schools
- CDI (*En France*)

UNITÉ 8

Mes journées sont bien remplies !

110



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Arranging a meeting
- Talking about daily routines
- Saying when / how often you do these activities
- Talking about leisure activities for young people
- Saying what activities and pastimes you like / don't like to do

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *ien / ienne* and *c*
- The irregular verb *faire*
- Using *faire* and *jouer*
- Expressions: *mardi, le mardi*
- Adverbs of manner, place, degree, time and frequency

ESPACE CULTURE

- Leisure activities in France for young people (e.g. cultural, sporting, theatrical, musical)
- The arts in France
- Tech-savvy and connected!
- *La « culture de la chambre »*
- Dictation (*En France*)

UNITÉ 9

Comment sont-ils ?

124



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Describing someone's appearance
- Talking about someone's personality
- Expressing opinions about others

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *u* and *ou*
- Direct object pronouns
- Prepositional forms *au, à la, à l', aux* to describe people
- Using *être* and *avoir* to describe people
- The verb *préférer*
- Adjectives: position and agreement, nationality

ESPACE CULTURE

- National identity: how is this defined
- The idea of France as a nation
- Regional languages in France
- Famous French people: how did they contribute to history?
- French live music venues (*En France*)

MISE AU
POINT
Unités 7 & 8

122

UNITÉ 10

Vous désirez, mesdemoiselles ? 138



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Asking about buying clothing items in shops
- Offering and recommending items
- Asking about clothing sizes and colours
- Asking for and giving prices of items
- Talking about buying the items
- Talking about bargains
- Using numbers 60–100

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *-er / -ère, -ier / -ière* and *-tion / -ssion*
- Adverbs of intensity (e.g. *assez, très, trop*)
- Demonstrative adjectives *ce, cet, cette, ces*
- Present tense verb + infinitive (e.g. *je voudrais acheter*)
- Verbs *acheter, vendre*

ESPACE CULTURE

- Shopping in Paris (department stores, boutiques, flea markets, supermarkets, village markets)
- The euro as currency
- Ugg boots (*En France*)
- Origins of jeans and denim (*En France*)
- Using catalogues to find presents

MISE AU POINT
Unités 9 & 10

152

VOL DE DÉCOUVERTE 3
La France et l'Australie : une comparaison

154

UNITÉ 11

Bonjour Toulouse ! 156



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Identifying places in a French town
- Asking for and giving directions to get to places
- Saying where places are in relation to each other

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *i, il, ill, ille* and *ch*
- Regular *-ir* verbs *finir, choisir, grandir, réussir*
- Irregular *-ir* verbs *partir, sortir*

ESPACE CULTURE

- *Le quartier*: types of shops and services in a French town
- Toulouse: history, Occitan influence, aerospace industry, Canal du Midi
- Toulouse Capitole, cathedral and basilica (*En France*)
- Learning French in France

UNITÉ 12

Les grandes vacances 170



FAÇONS DE PARLER

- Talking about holiday plans
- Talking about the weather

OUTILS LANGUE

- Pronouncing *ui* and *gn*
- Present tense verb + infinitive (e.g. *j'espère faire, il faut choisir*)
- The future tense (*futur proche*)
- Using *faire* to describe weather
- Using *avoir* to express physical feelings (e.g. hot, cold, hungry, thirsty)
- Using *être* to describe things that are hot or cold
- *Pronom complément de lieu 'y'*

ESPACE CULTURE

- France as a tourist destination
- Holiday periods in France
- Types of holiday accommodation
- Paris Plages (*En France*)

MISE AU POINT
Unités 11 & 12

182

Verbes – tableaux des conjugaisons 184

Résumé grammatical 188

Vocabulaire français–anglais 190

Vocabulaire anglais–français 198

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

Unit introduction

The opening spread gives you a visual introduction to the unit, with lots of prompts for intercultural discussion. Looking at culturally rich and authentic photographs, you will be able to reflect on different aspects of French culture.



SITUATIONS

Follow the adventures of Sophie and her friends Nathan, Clara and Yassine. The cartoons will be the first texts you read in each unit, introducing you to the language in a fun and engaging way. It won't be long before you'll be able to master the key structures.



FAÇONS DE PARLER

This is where you start looking at how French language works. You will learn about the different functions of specific structures, such as how to introduce someone and what expression to use.



OUTILS LANGUE

This is where you get an overview of the grammar and language in the unit, with lots of examples and explanations. The focus of this section is on the building blocks of language that form the basis for the structures you have learnt in *Façons de parler*.



ESPACE CULTURE

Explore French culture and the French-speaking world through texts in English and a variety of text types in French, such as emails, blogs, online forums, advertisements and reports.



Projet and Vocabulaire

On the last page of each unit you will have the chance to challenge yourself with a final project that will allow you to further explore intercultural aspects of the language and cultural knowledge you have gained in the unit. To support you in this task, there is a handy summary of the key vocabulary and phrases from the unit.



EN FRANCE

Explore some of the distinctive aspects of French culture in relation to the key topics in each unit.

PRACTICE TIME!

Throughout the unit you will have the opportunity to engage in different activities, putting in practice the language you are learning.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Here you will focus on your speaking and listening skills to produce role-plays and conversations.

FIND OUT MORE

Use your online research skills to source information that will help you answer the questions presented.

REFLECT AND CREATE

These tasks encourage you to reflect on your French learning and use your knowledge in imaginative ways.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Through these tasks you will compare the French and English languages and cultures.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In these tasks you are asked to discuss a variety of questions about French culture and language with your classmates and teacher.

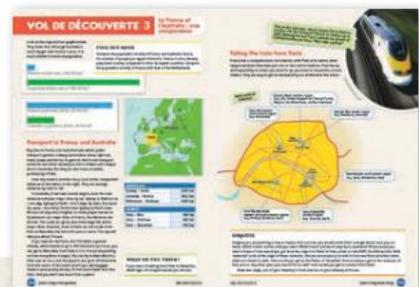
Mise au point

This is a revision section that occurs after every two units. You are asked to reflect on language (expressions and vocabulary) and culture (making comparisons with other cultures).



Vol de découverte

At the end of every few units you have the chance to go deeper into French culture, while engaging in fun and creative activities.



Icons

Throughout your Student Book you will find the following icons, which signal extra resources on the student website. These are also hotspotted in the NelsonNetBook. Click on the icon to open the resource.



animated version of the cartoon story



audio recording



interactive activity



video



worksheet to complete a speaking task



worksheet to complete a class game



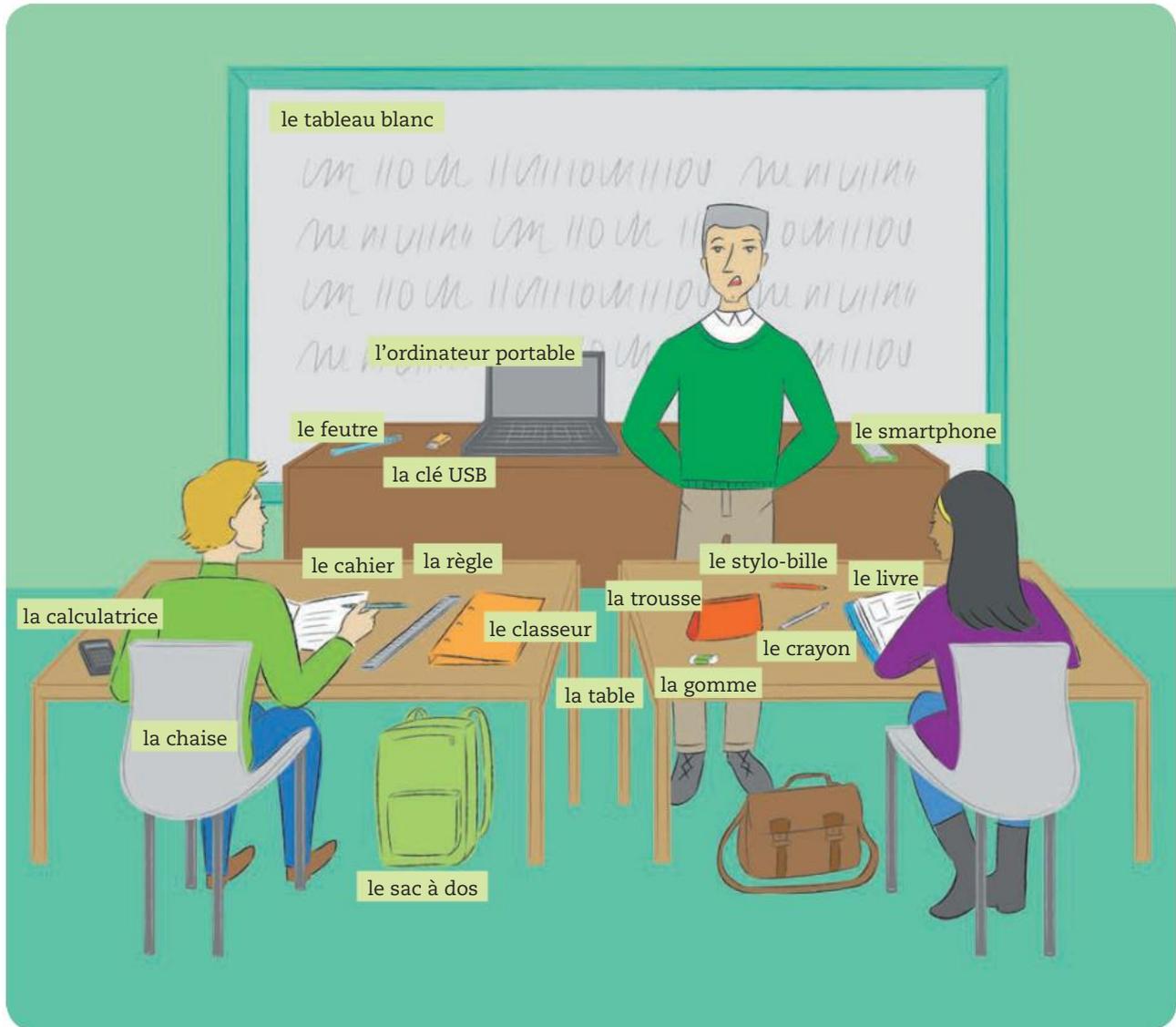
end-of-unit quiz



play 'n' say: Listen to the text, record yourself saying the words, then listen to your recording.

LA SALLE DE CLASSE

Let's start learning French right now! Here are the names of a number of objects you will be using in the French classroom, and some common expressions you will be hearing and saying.



Expressions

Bonjour, tout le monde. Hello everybody.

Asseyez-vous ! Sit down!

Levez-vous ! Stand up!

Silence, s'il vous plaît ! Quiet please!

Écoutez ! Listen!

Répondez ! Answer!

Répétez ! Repeat!

Regardez ! Look!

C'est juste ? Is that correct?

Oui, c'est juste. Yes, it's correct.

Non, c'est faux. No, it's wrong.

Vrai. / Faux. True. / False.

À qui le tour ? Whose turn is it?

À moi ! My turn!

Excusez-moi. Excuse me.

Attention ! Be careful!

Recommencez ! Start again!

Bravo ! Well done!

Très bien ! Very good!

Chut ! Taisez-vous ! Shhh! Stop talking!

Au revoir. À demain. Goodbye. See you tomorrow.

BIENVENUE AUX PERSONNAGES DANS TAPIS VOLANT



Sophie Harvey is an Australian 15-year-old, living in Paris with her parents and brother. She is a fluent French speaker, having attended bilingual schools in Melbourne. She is now in *troisième* at a French *collège* (junior high school). She is also a keen and talented soccer player.



Nathan Lambert is a French boy in Sophie's class.

Yassine Benjelloun, a French boy of Moroccan descent, is a friend of Sophie and Nathan's and in the same class. He is mad about sport!



Clara Lagarde is a French girl in the same class as Sophie, Nathan and Yassine.



Liam Harvey is Sophie's 10-year-old brother, who also attended a bilingual school in Melbourne. He is in CM2, the last year of primary school.



Guillaume Lagarde is Clara's 10-year-old brother. He is in the same class as Liam.



Salma Benjelloun is Yassine's 10-year-old sister. She is also in CM2 and the same class as Liam.



Anne and David Harvey are Sophie and Liam's parents. Anne works in Paris as an interpreter. David works as an aeronautical engineer, often travelling to Toulouse for training on A380s at the Airbus factory.



Jean-Pierre and Danielle Lagarde are the parents of Clara and Guillaume.



Jasmine and Karim Benjelloun are the parents of Yassine and Salma.

Bienvenue en France !

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say 'hello' and 'goodbye'
- introduce yourself
- give your nationality
- welcome someone to your country
- apologise
- express surprise
- express disappointment.

You will also learn about:

- the French passion for football (soccer)
- places where you can walk or jog or play football in Paris
- Paris cafés and bistros
- French icons.

La cathédrale de Notre-Dame viewed from the Seine. It is situated on the île de la Cité in the middle of the river.



Playing football (soccer) in front of la tour Eiffel





Football practice and relaxation in the Luxembourg Gardens (le jardin du Luxembourg). In many parks in Paris you are not allowed to walk on the grass.

Getty Images/Christian Science Monitor



Alamy Stock Photo/Travel Pictures

A typical bistro in Paris. When you sit at the counter, you pay less than if you sit at a table.

Le musée du Louvre and la pyramide de verre de Pei, a glass and metal structure that serves as the main entrance to the museum. The Louvre building was originally a royal palace, but it became a museum in 1793, four years after the French Revolution. The pyramid was completed in 1989.



The old, traditional restaurants La Bonne Franquette and Le Consulat were frequented by famous artists such as Van Gogh, Toulouse-Lautrec and Manet.



Getty Images/Alamy/Travel Pictures



Yassine



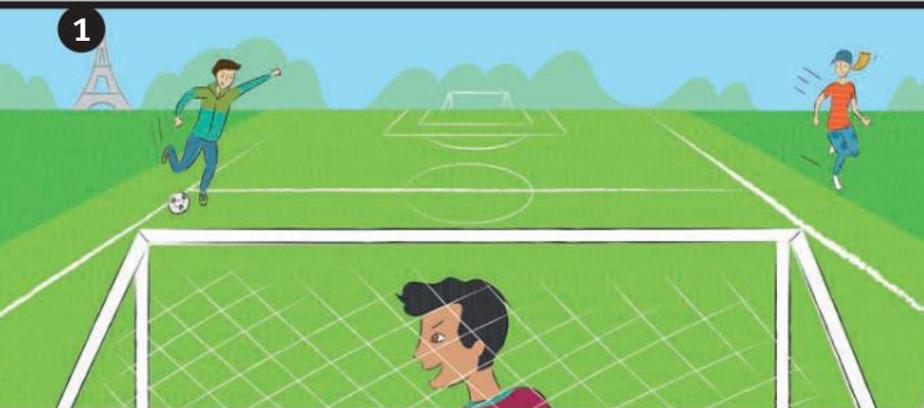
Nathan



Sophie

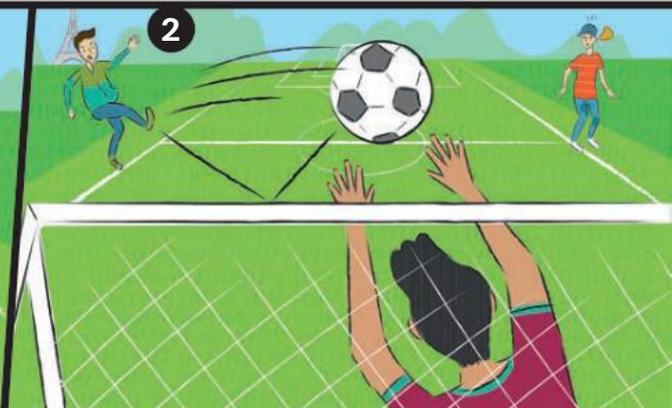
Elle est sensationnelle !

Yassine and Nathan are practising goal kicking on a soccer field when Sophie runs by and stops to watch them. The football accidentally lands at her feet. She juggles it, then kicks a sizzling goal. The boys are greatly impressed and introduce themselves to her.



1

Yassine Vas-y ! À toi !



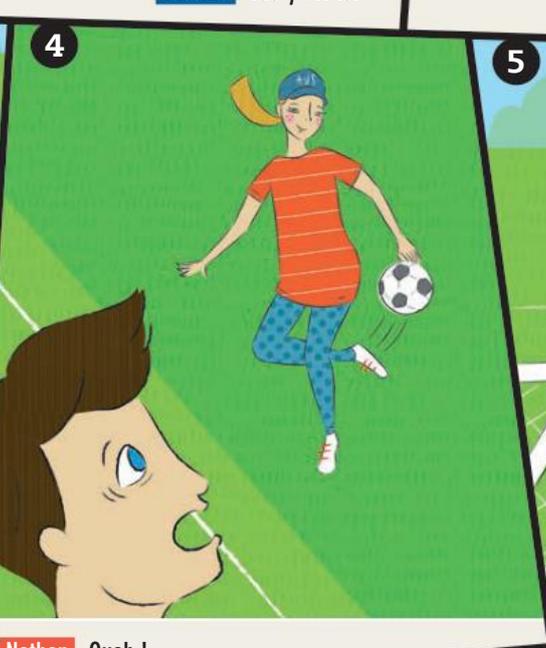
2

Nathan Ah non !



3

Yassine Oh ! Pardon !



4

Nathan Ouah !



5

Sophie Attention !!



6

Yassine Sensationnelle !

Nathan Super !



7

Nathan Bonjour ! Bravo !

Sophie Merci. Le foot, c'est génial, non ?



8

Nathan Je m'appelle Nathan. Et toi ?

Sophie Moi, je m'appelle Sophie.

Yassine Et moi, je m'appelle Yassine.



Nathan Tu es anglaise, Sophie ?

Sophie Mais non ! Je suis australienne. *Australian.*

Yassine Ah ! L'Australie, c'est bien ! Le surf ! Les Wallabies ! Les Socceroos !

Sophie Et les Matildas ?

Yassine Euh... ah oui ! Les Matildas... euh... !

10



Sophie Et toi, tu es français ?

Nathan Oui, je suis français.

Yassine Moi, je suis français... et marocain.

11



Sophie Bon, j'y vais... Au revoir.

Yassine Au revoir.

Nathan Salut ! À bientôt !

Bienvenue en France !

The Harvey family is welcomed to France by a senior staff member from Airbus, the company where Mr Harvey is working.

French host

Bonjour monsieur Harvey.
Madame Harvey. Et bonjour
les jeunes Australiens.
Asseyez-vous, je vous prie.

Bienvenue en France !



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues.



EN FRANCE

The French love their dogs and in France it is quite common to see dogs inside and outside cafés. They lie quietly under the table or in their owner's lap until the meal is over, and they are openly offered titbits.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Where are dogs allowed or not allowed in Australia? Which do you prefer – the French situation or the Australian one?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Saying hello

Salut !

Bonjour !

2 Telling someone your name and asking someone their name

A Je m'appelle Anna.

A Et toi ? Tu t'appelles comment ?

B Moi, je m'appelle David.

3 Telling someone your nationality, and asking their nationality

Je suis australien.

Je suis australienne.

Et toi ?

Tu es français ?

Tu es française ?

Et vous ?

Vous êtes anglais ?

Vous êtes anglaise ?

4 Welcoming someone to a country

Bienvenue en France !

A Bienvenue en Australie !

B Merci.

5 Saying goodbye, see you soon

Au revoir, et à bientôt !

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

NATIONALITIES

	anglais / anglaise
	australien / australienne
	canadien / canadienne
	français / française
	italien / italienne
	marocain / marocaine

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

- 1.1 **Bonjour !** Work in groups of three or four and pretend you don't know each other. Say 'hello' and introduce yourselves. Then ask each other your nationality. (Some of you pretend to be French.)
 - 1.2 **Tu es anglais(e) ?** Work in groups of three or four. One asks the question and the others answer in turn, using one of the nationalities shown.
 - 1.3 **Au revoir !** Work in groups of three or four. It's the end of the school day. Say 'goodbye' to one another, saying you'll see one another soon.
- Salut, c'est toi ?**

EN PLUS !

Take turns saying these expressions with a partner, and describe a situation when this expression would be used.

Pardon !

Attention !

Formidable !

Bravo !

Vas-y !

FIND OUT MORE

How would you say the following expressions in French? (You may need a dictionary.)

Extraordinary!

Incredible!

Magnificent!

LES EXCLAMATIONS



Pardon !



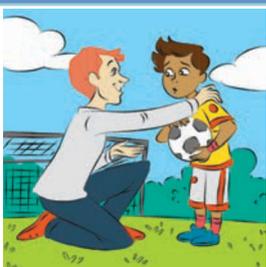
Attention !



Formidable !



Bravo !



Vas-y !

Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer a et à en français



The letter a (sometimes à) occurs very often in the dialogues. Did you hear how it is pronounced? Listen carefully to how it is pronounced in these examples:

Salut !

Formid**a**ble !

Yassine

Je m'**a**ppelle

À bientôt !

Did the letter a sound like the 'a' in 'cat' and 'hat'? Or did it sound like 'Ah!', as doctors ask you to say when they want to look at your throat? If you thought it sounded like 'Ah!', then you are correct. The 'a' sound in 'cat' and 'hat' does not exist in French. You have to train yourself to say 'ah' when you see a or à.

2 Les lettres muettes

If you listen carefully to the *Situations*, you will find that in many of the words there are consonants that are not pronounced. For example:

salu



t

(the 't' is not pronounced)

c'es



t

(the 't' is not pronounced)

françai



s

(the 's' is not pronounced)

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

The way we write words in French does not often correspond to the way we pronounce them. Believe it or not, English is just as hard – 'ough', for instance, can be pronounced five different ways, as in 'cough', 'rough', 'through', 'though' and 'bough'. Can you think of other English examples of words where learners of English might make mistakes in pronunciation? For example: 'woman' and 'women'.

3 L'alphabet



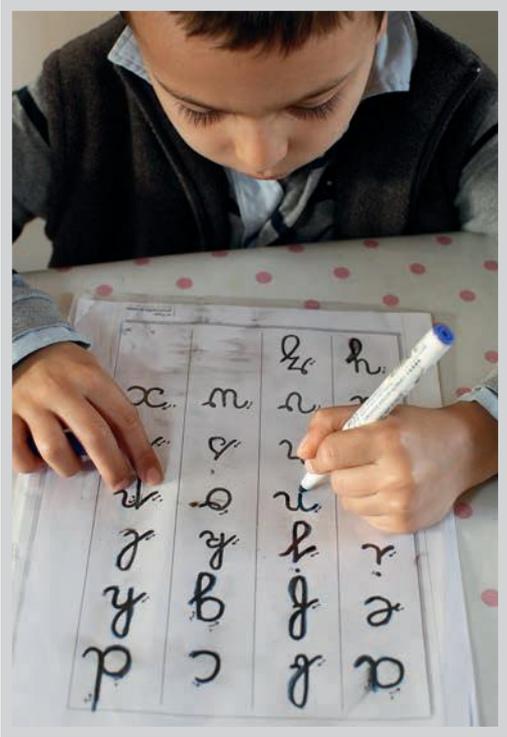
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R
S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	

After you've listened to the letters of the alphabet being pronounced, practise saying them. Which letters are pronounced the same way in English, and which are pronounced differently?

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Work with a partner. Spell out your full name using the French alphabet. Your partner writes it down. Check that the name is spelt correctly and then swap roles. When you've finished, take turns making up names and spelling them out to each other.

This is how French students form letters when they learn to write. How does this style differ from the way you write? Why do you think there are so many lines on the page of this French exercise book?



Photoshot/Philippe Lissac/Godong

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Was neat handwriting important when you were in primary school? Do you think it should be important?
- In what way is writing different in Chinese, Japanese, Arabic, Hebrew and maybe some other languages that you know?
- Do you think that sometime in the future handwriting will disappear? Give reasons for your opinion.

Grammaire

1 Les pronoms je, tu et vous

The French pronoun *je* means 'I'. The pronoun *tu* means 'you', but only when you are talking to one person, and that person is someone you know well or another young person like yourself in a casual situation.

Je m'appelle Nathan. **Je** suis australien / australienne. **Tu** es français / française ?

When you are talking to more than one person, or speaking to someone in a formal situation, you use the pronoun *vous*.

Vous êtes australien(s) / australienne(s) ? Asseyez-**vous**, je vous prie.



FIND OUT MORE

Write down two cases in everyday life in France when you would use *tu* when speaking to someone, and two cases when you would use *vous*.

English has only one definite article, 'the', while French has three. First, this is because French nouns can be either masculine or feminine, whether they refer to people, animals or things. So 'the' in front of a singular noun can be *le* or *la*.

m *le* stylo *le* livre (because the noun is masculine)

f *la* trousse *la* table (because the noun is feminine)

Second, when the noun is plural (more than one), the article becomes *les* for both masculine and feminine nouns.

m *les* stylos *les* livres

f *les* troussees *les* tables

Note: The plural form of the noun must also be shown (livre → livres).

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Look at these nouns. Why is the article not *le* or *la* but *l'* in front of these nouns?

f l'Australie

m l'ordinateur

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

One of the tasks in learning a second language is getting your head around some concepts that seem a bit weird. *Table* is a feminine noun in French, so we have to say *la table*. Is a table a girl? A book is masculine – *le livre*.

A book is a boy? No, in these cases, gender is simply a grammatical concept; it has nothing to do with things being considered male or female.

Other languages also have grammatical gender. For example, Italian and Spanish have masculine and feminine gender. German has masculine, feminine and neuter gender. And in German the word *mädchen* ('girl') is neuter!

Language learning expands your mind because it introduces you to different ways of looking at the world. Grammatical gender may seem weird to you, but for the millions of people who speak Italian, Spanish and German it's quite normal. For them, it's English that's weird!



Alamy Stock Photo/Sigrid Olsson

Conversations



Enzo is an Italian name, a short form of Vincenzo or Lorenzo. However, in France it is a popular name for boys.

Sarah Bonjour.

Je m'appelle Sarah. Et toi ?

Enzo ? Tu es italien ?

Enzo Bonjour.

Moi, je m'appelle Enzo.

Non, je suis français.

Scout Bravo ! Formidable !!

Tu es sensationnel ! Comment tu t'appelles ?

Pardon ?

Tu es français ?

Ah ! Bienvenue en France !

Pierre Je m'appelle Pierre Bouchon.

P-I-E-R-R-E – Pierre – B-O-U-C-H-O-N – Bouchon.

Non, je suis canadien.

Le foot

The French love sport. Football (soccer) is by far the most popular sport in France. Residents of major cities such as Marseilles, Lyons, Bordeaux, Toulouse and Paris are passionate about their local teams, for example *Olympique de Marseille* and *Paris Saint-Germain*. There are several women's football leagues in France but, as in Australia, they are not as well known (or as well paid) as the men's teams.

The men's French national football team is known as *les Bleus* and the women's national team as *les Bleues*. The symbol for these and most French national sporting teams is the rooster, *le coq gaulois*, with the colours of the French flag.



Getty Images/Franck Fife

FIND OUT MORE

Look up the world rankings of the Australian men's and women's soccer teams and compare them to the French ones.

Une conversation



FIND OUT MORE

If you are French, you will know what these symbols mean because they are representative of French culture.

Search online to find out what each phrase on the right means, and match it to the correct image.

What is the difference between the fleur-de-lis and the tricolour flag? Hint: The fleur-de-lis is not the symbol of the French state today.

1



Shutterstock.com/
Matthew Dixon

2



Shutterstock.com/
netfall

3



Dreamstime.com/
Becqpherman

4



Shutterstock.com/
Carsten Reisinger

5



Dreamstime.com/
Lolodoc35

6



Shutterstock.com/
kan_khampanya

7



Shutterstock.com/
andersphoto

a *la Croix de Lorraine*

b *l'Arc de Triomphe*

c *le coq gaulois*

d *Liberté, Égalité, Fraternité*

e *la tour Eiffel*

f *la fleur de lis*

g *le drapeau tricolore*

REFLECT AND CREATE

Does Australia have cultural icons? Design your own Australian icon.

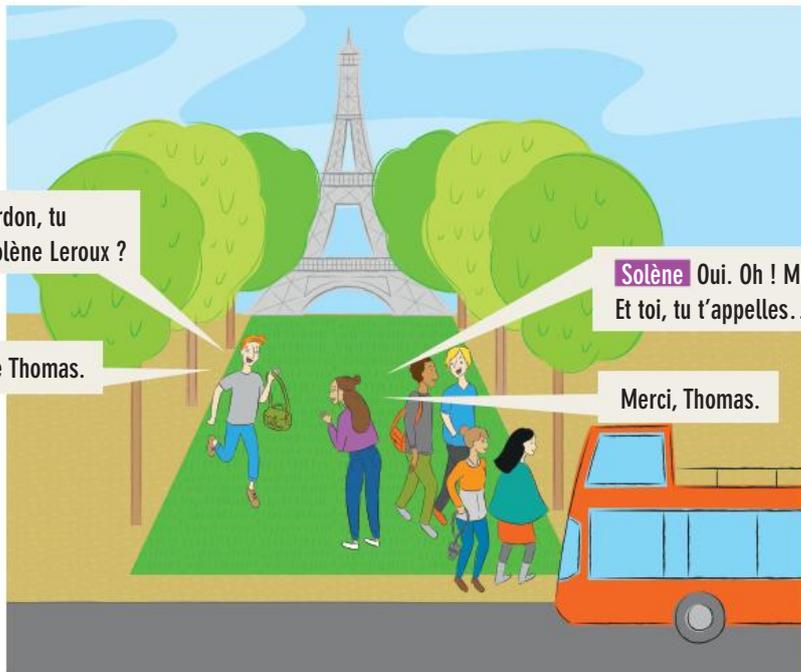


Thomas Pardon, tu t'appelles Solène Leroux ?

Solène Oui. Oh ! Merci ! Et toi, tu t'appelles...

Je m'appelle Thomas.

Merci, Thomas.



Espaces verts de Paris

Although there are green spaces in Paris, Parisians jog and play football or *pétanque* (French bowls) almost anywhere, even on cobblestones! Not good places to play rugby or Australian rules football! Popular parks include the:

- Bois de Boulogne, a former royal hunting ground
- Bois de Vincennes, the largest green area in Paris
- Jardin du Luxembourg, a formal park for strolling around
- Parc des Buttes-Chaumont and the Coulée verte René-Dumont (also known as the Promenade plantée), two large parks for strolling, jogging or playing football or volleyball.

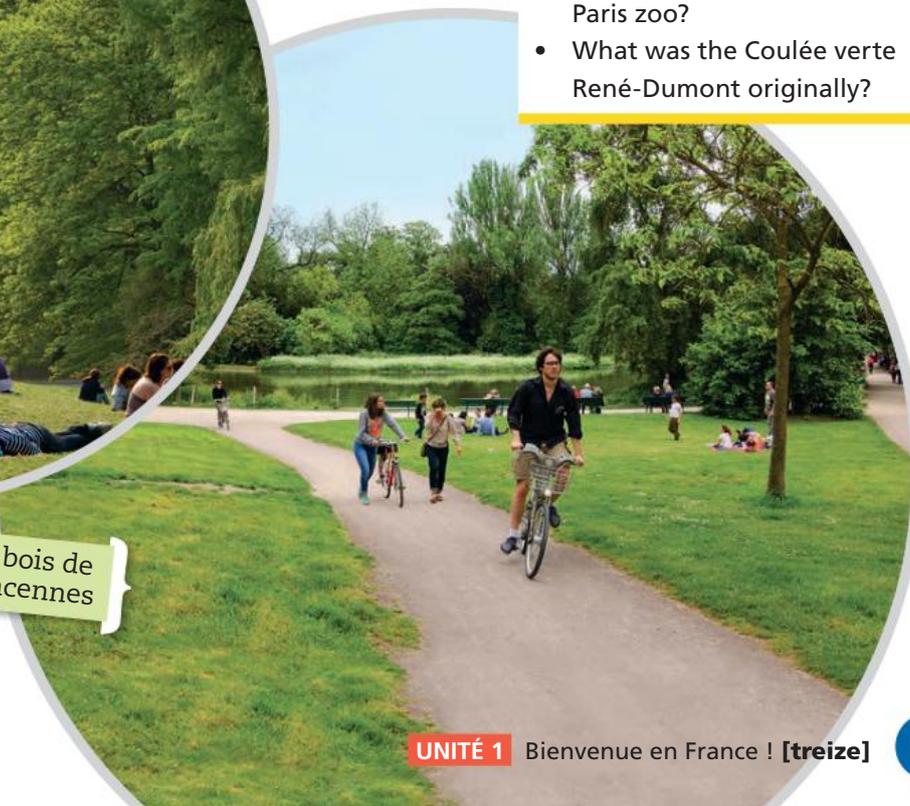
FIND OUT MORE

Look up the parks listed on this page on the Internet and find answers to these questions:

- What leisure activities can you do in the Bois de Boulogne and the Bois de Vincennes?
- What is the Hippodrome de Longchamp and where would you find it?
- What is the Stade Roland-Garros and where would you find it?
- Where would you find the Paris zoo?
- What was the Coulée verte René-Dumont originally?

Le parc des Buttes-Chaumont

Le bois de Vincennes



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

You already know more French than you think. Why is this?

In 1066, England was invaded by the Normans led by William the Conqueror. They were from Normandy in northern France and spoke French. French remained the official language of the ruling classes in England – government, law and education – for over 300 years. Largely because of this, nearly 30 per cent of English words come from French. For example, all words ending in ‘-ation’ (all 2000 of them) are the same in French and English: ‘nation’, ‘conversation’, ‘celebration’, ‘continuation’ and 1996 more. Of course, they are pronounced differently. But some more good news is that they are all feminine – *la nation, la conversation* and so on.

Have you noticed that in English there are a number of everyday words that come in pairs, having more or less the same meaning? For example: ‘deep/profound’ and ‘child/infant’. This is because both the Old English word and the French word have remained in the language.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Look at the words below. Put those with similar meaning in pairs and decide which one comes from French and which one from Old English.

liberty	inn	go in	royal
marriage	go down	egotism	commence
wedding	descend	freedom	begin
kingly	selfishnes	enter	hotel

- Look at the signs below. Can you work out what they mean?



Shutterstock.com/VanHart



Shutterstock.com/Claudia Beaubien



Shutterstock.com/Carole Castelli



Shutterstock.com/Paul Merrett



Shutterstock.com/Arcady

Working in a group or by yourself, collect French words, phrases and signs you can recognise. Use different sources, such as French magazines and newspapers, French café advertisements, or websites of French companies and organisations in Australia (for example, the Alliance Française, the French Embassy, French banks and French car companies).

Create a presentation of what you consider to be the most interesting words, phrases and signs, and share them with your classmates. Put them all together under the heading, 'We know more French than we think', and display your presentation in the classroom. New words can be added from time to time.

Hint: You could look up French websites for recipes, restaurant menus, fashion houses, supermarkets, tourism advertisements, sports, transport, cars, animals and so on. You will also find French brand names in supermarkets and in the clothing and perfume sections of department stores.

VOCABULAIRE



Greetings and farewells

Bonjour !	Hello!
Au revoir.	Goodbye.
Salut.	Hi. / Bye. / Cheers.
À bientôt !	See you later!

Saying what nationality you are

anglais(e)	English
australien(ne)	Australian
français(e)	French
marocain(e)	Moroccan
italien(ne)	Italian
canadien(ne)	Canadian

Activities

le foot	football (soccer)
le surf	surfing

Descriptive words

formidable	great, terrific
sensationnel(le)	sensational
génial(e)	brilliant

Useful expressions when talking to people

Pardon.	Sorry.
Merci.	Thank you.
Je m'appelle...	My name is ...
Oui.	Yes.
Non.	No.
Euh...	Um ...
Asseyez-vous, je vous prie.	Sit down, please.
Bienvenue.	Welcome.
Bon, j'y vais.	OK, I'm off.

Exclamations

Bravo !	Bravo!
Vas-y !	Go on!
À toi !	Your turn!
Ouah !	Wow!
Attention !	Watch out!
Super !	Super !

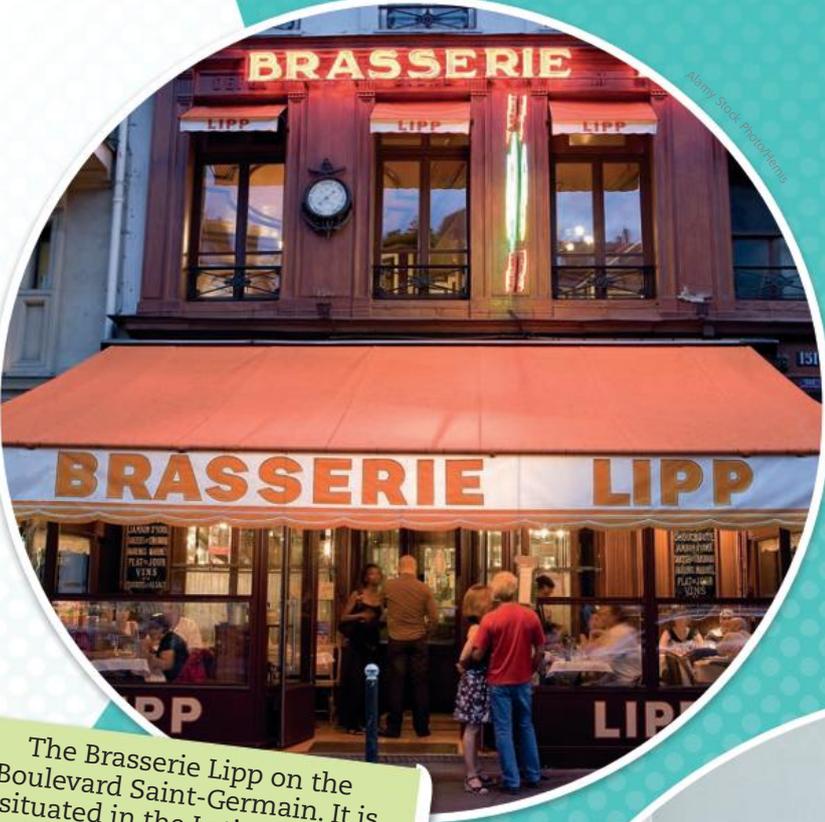
C'est beau, Paris

In this unit you will learn how to:

- greet friends and adults
- respond to greetings
- ask how someone is
- express surprise
- offer someone a drink
- accept or refuse an offer.

You will also learn about:

- the start of the French school year – *la rentrée*
- places to meet people in Paris
- French forms of courtesy (in speech and gesture).



The Brasserie Lipp on the Boulevard Saint-Germain. It is situated in the Latin Quarter, traditionally the student area of Paris. Latin was once the main language used in universities.



The busy terrace of the Café République on the Place de la République. This square features a statue of Marianne, symbol of the republic, and is surrounded by statues representing Liberté, Fraternité and Égalité.



Shutterstock.com/Philippe Kossauyev

The Café de Flore, on the Boulevard Saint-Germain opposite the Brasserie Lipp. Like many well-known cafés in Paris, it was a hub for writers, philosophers and painters such as Pablo Picasso.

Getty Images/Bruno Vigneron

Entrance to Le Procope, Paris's oldest café, founded in 1686 by an Italian, Francesco Procopio dei Coltelli, and also in the Latin Quarter. Procope's regulars used to include famous French writers and philosophers such as La Fontaine, Voltaire, Rousseau and Victor Hugo.

Images.com/Robert Johnson



Getty Images/Francois Sautter

The Café des Chats, where you can have a drink or a meal in the company of cats. It is based on *neko* (cat) restaurants in Japan. The cats are all adopted and well behaved. You can play with them, but you can't feed them. (And you can't bring your own cat!)



Nathan



Clara



Yassine



Sophie

Vous connaissez Sophie ?

Nathan Lambert and his friend Yassine Benjelloun are at a café on the Place de la République. They see their classmate Clara Lagarde and they greet each other. Clara sees Sophie, an Australian girl, a new classmate she has met. Clara is surprised that the boys have met Sophie already.



1

Nathan Salut Clara !



2

Clara Salut Nathan ! Salut Yassine !



3

Yassine Tu vas bien ?
Clara Oui. Et vous ?



4

Nathan Oui, ça va.
Yassine Non, moi, ça ne va pas.
Clara Pourquoi ?
Yassine Demain, c'est la rentrée.
Clara Ah, oui. La rentrée. Déjà !



5

Clara Sophie ! Je suis là !



6

Sophie Bonjour Clara ! Comment vas-tu ?
Clara Salut Sophie ! Ça va bien. Et toi ?
Sophie Ça va bien, merci.



7

Clara Sophie est une nouvelle camarade de classe.
Nathan Bonjour Sophie ! Quelle surprise !
Clara Tu connais Sophie ?
Yassine Bonjour Sophie !
Clara Vous connaissez Sophie tous les deux ? Mais comment ?
Nathan Aujourd'hui... au terrain de foot...



8

Nathan Eh bien, asseyez-vous. Un café ? Un thé ?
Clara C'est gentil, merci, mais pas aujourd'hui. Nous sommes en retard.
Nathan C'est dommage. Au revoir, alors, et à demain.
Clara Tchao !
Yassine Bye !



9

Clara Il est triste, Yassine.
Sophie Il est sympa, Nathan.
Nathan Elle est mignonne, Sophie.
Yassine Oh là là là ! C'est fini, les vacances !



EN FRANCE

La rentrée scolaire is when students return to their school, which opens again after the summer holidays in July and August, just before autumn arrives. La rentrée usually happens on or around 1 September.



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

When is *la rentrée* in your school or state? Are your main holidays and your *rentrée* in the same season as in France?



Yassine



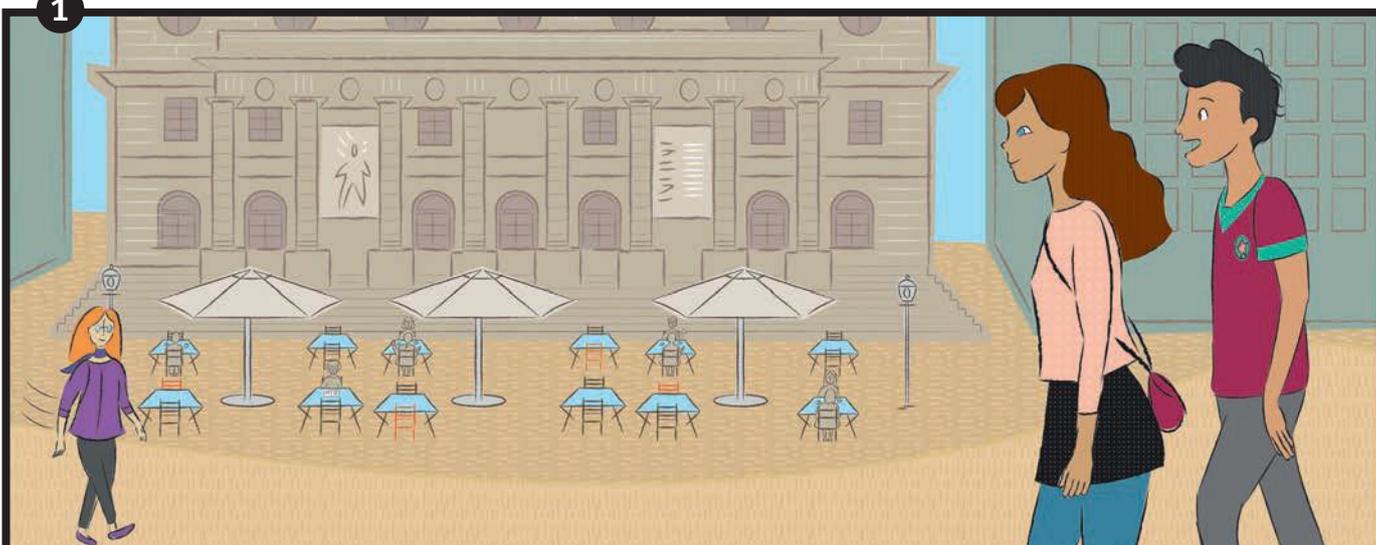
Mme Leclerc



Clara

Souriez, c'est la rentrée !

1



Yassine Tiens, voilà madame Leclerc, notre prof d'anglais !

2



Mme Leclerc Ah, bonjour Clara. Bonjour Yassine. Vous allez bien ?

Clara Oui, merci. Et vous, madame ?

Mme Leclerc Moi, ça va très bien, merci.

3



Mme Leclerc Bonne journée !
Demain, c'est la rentrée, n'est-ce pas ?
C'est fini les vacances ?

Yassine Yes, and I wish very much
for my English classes.

Mme Leclerc Bravo Yassine !

Clara Au revoir madame. À demain.

4



Clara Ça ne va pas non ?



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues.

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Greeting someone, asking how they are and replying



A Salut Julia. Tu vas bien ?

B Salut Anna. Oui, ça va.

A Vous allez bien, madame Xavier ?

B Ça va très bien, merci.

2 Asking someone if they know a person



A Tu connais Élise ?

B Ah oui, c'est une camarade de classe !

A Tu connais Christian ?

B Ah oui, c'est un camarade de classe !

A Vous connaissez madame Moreau ?

B Oui, c'est notre prof de français.

3 Accepting an offer to have a drink



A Asseyez-vous. Un café ? Un thé ?

B Ah oui, un café s'il vous plaît !

4 Refusing an offer



A Asseyez-vous. Un café ? Un thé ?

B C'est gentil, merci, mais pas aujourd'hui.

5 Wishing someone a good day and saying you will see them tomorrow



A Bonne journée Nathan ! À demain !

B Au revoir alors, et à demain Clara.

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

EN PLUS !

Practise saying these expressions aloud.



Oh là là !



Quelle surprise !



Je suis là !



Mais comment ?



C'est dommage.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

2.1 **Tu connais... ?** Select a classmate and then ask the others in your class if they know this person. You then say who the person is.

2.2 **Bonjour ! Salut !** Take turns greeting a classmate and a teacher and asking how they are.

Jeune classe 2 **Regardez, c'est... !**

FIND OUT MORE

What does this expression mean? (You may need a dictionary.)

Bonjour les amis. Comment ça va ?

Phonétique et graphie

Les accents

Written French uses a number of extra marks over (or under) letters in certain words. These marks are called accents. They have to be included when you write the words, even when there is a capital letter.

- ´ acute accent (*l'accent aigu*) as in *enchanté*
- ` grave accent (*l'accent grave*) as in *Voilà !*
- ^ circumflex accent (*l'accent circonflexe*) as in *bientôt*
- ¸ cedilla (*la cédille*) as in *Ça va*
- ¨ dieresis (*le tréma*) as in *Raphaël*

The accents do not always have a noticeable effect on the pronunciation of a word, but there are two important instances where they do:

- 1 When the letter 'e' has an acute accent, it is pronounced (*café*). However, an 'e' without an acute accent at the end of a word is not pronounced (*Je m'appelle*).
- 2 When the letter 'c' has a cedilla, it is always pronounced 's' (*ça va*). In other cases, the letter 'c' is pronounced 'k' (*café*) or 's' (*lycée*).

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Say these words and decide whether you pronounce the final 'e' or not:

<i>rentrée</i>	<i>journée</i>	<i>continue</i>
<i>formidable</i>	<i>Yassine</i>	<i>liberté</i>
<i>triste</i>	<i>thé</i>	<i>nouvelle</i>

Say these words and decide whether you pronounce the letter 'c' as a 'k' or an 's' sound:

<i>ça</i>	<i>connais</i>	<i>continue</i>
<i>café</i>	<i>marocain</i>	<i>merci</i>
<i>leçon</i>	<i>français</i>	<i>écoutez</i>

Grammaire

1 Le verbe être

These verb forms are among the most frequently used in French.

être (to be)			
je suis	I am	nous sommes	we are
tu es	you are (singular)	vous êtes *	you are
il est	he is	ils sont	they are (masculine)
elle est	she is	elles sont	they are (feminine)

* *Vous êtes* may be used as a singular (polite) form or as a plural form (more than one).

Here are some examples:

Je **suis** français.

Il **est** sympa.

Elles **sont** en retard.

2 La négation *ne... pas*

Two words are used in French to make an expression negative: *ne... pas* – one on either side of the verb.

Positive statements: Ça va. Il est triste. Ils sont là.

Negative statements: Ça **ne** va **pas**. Il **n'est pas** triste. Ils **ne** sont **pas** là.

3 Les adjectifs

French nouns have a masculine or feminine form (*le livre, la table*), and so do most French adjectives. The gender of the adjective is the same as the gender of the noun – we say that the adjective ‘agrees’ with the noun.

m Il est australien.

f Elle est australienne.

m Il est français.

f Elle est française.

m Il est mignon.

f Elle est mignonne.

Most adjectives in French have different endings for the masculine and feminine forms, but there are some exceptions. Here is one example.

m Il est sympa.

f Elle est sympa.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

What are two differences in how the adjectives are treated in French and English in these sentences?

Il est australien. Elle est australienne.
He is Australian. She is Australian.

The more formal version of *sympa* is *sympathique*.

4 L'article indéfini

Whenever you use the indefinite article ‘a’ or ‘an’ in French, you have to choose between masculine and feminine, as with the definite article ‘the’. There are two words for ‘a’ or ‘an’ in French – *un* for masculine nouns, *une* for feminine nouns.

m un stylo un livre un ordinateur

f une trousse une table une chaise

The plural indefinite article, meaning ‘some’, is *des*. It is the same for masculine and feminine plural.

m des stylos des livres des ordinateurs

f des trouses des tables des chaises

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

The translation of *un/une camarade* is ‘a friend’, and *un/une prof* is ‘a teacher’. How would you translate *des camarades* and *des profs*? (Hint: In English there are two possibilities.)

Une conversation Skype

Clara has put Sophie in touch with a good friend of hers, Guido, who lives in Geneva. The two chat over Skype.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Read the Skype conversation aloud with a classmate. Then act out the conversation using your own details, such as your nationality, the town you live in and the name of a friend of yours.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

The use of *tu* and *vous*

There are two words for 'you' in French: *tu* and *vous*.

Use *tu* when you are talking to:

- a member of your family
- a person you know well, with whom you are very friendly
- a younger child
- an animal.

Use *vous* when you are talking to:

- an adult you don't know well
- more than one person
- your teacher (or any person in a position of authority).

Attention ! These expressions change according to whether you use *tu* or *vous*:

Je **vous** en prie. Je **t'**en prie.

S'il **vous** plaît. S'il **te** plaît.

On se tutoie ? is how you suggest using the *tu* form rather than the *vous* form with a friend.

FIND OUT MORE

Do you know of any other languages where there is more than one word for 'you'?

Skype

Bonjour Guido.

Alors, Sophie, tu es française ou anglaise ?

Je suis australienne. Et vous ?

Ah d'accord. Alors, et toi ?

Moi, je suis de Melbourne.

Ça va Guido. Demain, c'est la rentrée !

Ah oui ? À propos... tu connais Nathan ?

Nathan ? Oui. Il est sympa. Et Yassine. C'est un ami de Nathan.

Ah, c'est un garçon sympa mais un peu sérieux.

Eh bien, bon appétit Guido. À bientôt !

Bonjour Sophie.

On se tutoie ?

Moi, je suis suisse. Je suis de Genève. Et toi ?

Je connais Sydney mais pas Melbourne. Alors, ça va toi, à Paris ?

Je ne connais pas Yassine.

Oh ! Pardon, Sophie. C'est l'heure du dîner.

À bientôt Sophie.

Bonsoir monsieur Bonaparte !



Kevin



Max



Napoléon

1
Kevin Tiens, c'est Napoléon !
Max Ah bon ? T'es sûr ?
Kevin Ben, oui !
Max Hmm...

2
Max Salut ! Je m'appelle Max. Et toi ?

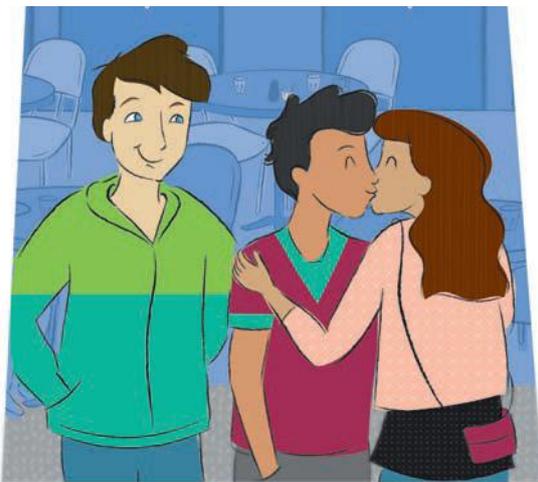
3
Max Tu es français ? Anglais ? Italien ?
Kevin Attention ! C'est Napoléon ! Vous, pas tu !!

4
Max Ah ! Bonsoir monsieur.
Je m'appelle Max. Et vous ? Vous êtes... ?

5
Napoléon Enchanté, Max. Je m'appelle Napoléon. Napoléon Bonaparte. Je suis Empereur des Français.

6
Max & Kevin Aaaahhhhhh !!!!

WHAT DO YOU THINK?



- Look at these pictures of French people greeting each other. When would you greet people in France in either of these two ways?
- How are the above gestures similar to or different from the way people greet each other in your country?
- Have you noticed other forms of greeting from other cultures?

Les gestes en France

Here are some gestures used in France to illustrate certain expressions.



Superbe !



Gare à toi !



Chut !



Ça ne va pas non ?

FIND OUT MORE

People in all parts of the world make expressive movements with their hands as they speak, or sometimes instead of speaking. These gestures often vary from one country to another. Do you know of any gestures used in English or in another language? (Polite gestures, of course!)



Non, merci.



Super !



C'est nul !

Where can I find something to eat or drink in France?

Posted by: gapyearguy93 on 19 May at 9.44 a.m.
 Posted in: Europe
 Tagged: France

I'm in France, and I'd like something to eat and drink. Should I go to a bistro, a brasserie, a café, a restaurant, a bar, a salon de thé or a relais?

FrenchTraveller on 19 May at 5.56 p.m.

Well, it's not a problem, because you can get a drink and food in all of these. There are, however, some differences.

Un bar, un café and *un restaurant* are basically the same as they are in Australia. Bars serve drinks and generally some snacks. Cafés serve drinks and snacks such as sandwiches or croissants, and sometimes cheap meals. Restaurants serve full meals. The word 'restaurant' comes from the verb *se restaurer* – 'to restore your strength by eating'.

Un bistrot (or *bistro*) is a place where you can get a quick meal or a snack, or just have drinks. The origins of the word *bistrot* are uncertain. Some say that the word entered the French language during the Russian occupation of Paris in 1814. Russian officers who wanted to be served quickly in restaurants shouted *Bystro!* ('Quickly!'). Not everyone accepts this theory, however.

Une brasserie is an eating and drinking establishment that originally brewed its own beer. Brasseries have immense menus and some of them are expensive. The Brasserie Lipp, for example, was one of the American author Ernest Hemingway's favourite places to eat and drink.

Un salon de thé specialises in tea along with cakes and pastries. These tearooms are basically for tea connoisseurs.

Un relais was originally a coach stop where teams of horses were changed for long-distance travel. Here again, you can get a relatively cheap meal and drinks.



Alamy Stock Photo/Peter Scholey

[ADD A REPLY](#)

PROJET

Find two or three famous cafés, restaurants or other meeting places in Paris where you would like to sit with your friends to have a chat, have something to eat or drink and take in the feeling of Paris. Prepare some attractive visuals of these places, find out a bit about their history if possible, and say why you would like to spend some time there. Then present your choices to the class.

Hint: Most well-known Parisian cafés and restaurants have online reviews and star ratings. Have a look at the food they offer. Maybe you can find a menu online. If you went there, what would you order? And how much would it cost? What famous places are close to your chosen cafés or restaurants?

FIND OUT MORE

In a real French restaurant, a menu does not mean the same as it does in English. What is the difference? How would you translate the French word *menu* into English?

VOCABULAIRE



People

le/la camarade de classe	classmate
le/la prof d'anglais	English teacher
le garçon	boy
la fille	girl
l'ami (m)	male friend
l'amie (f)	female friend

Places

le terrain de foot	football (soccer) field
le café	café

Expressions of time

aujourd'hui	today
demain	tomorrow

Ways to describe people

gentil(le)	kind, nice
mignon(ne)	cute
sympa	friendly, nice
nouveau/nouvelle	new
triste	sad

Useful expressions in conversation

Alors...	So ...
Comment... ?	How ...?
Tu connais... ? / Vous connaissez... ?	Do you know ...?
Eh bien...	Well ...
Pourquoi ?	Why?
Quel(le)s... ?	What/Which ...?
Ça ne va pas non ?	What's the matter with you?
..., n'est-ce pas ?	..., isn't it?
Tiens !	Look! Hey!
Voilà...	There's ...
C'est dommage !	That's a pity!
Vraiment ?	Really?
Bien sûr !	Of course!
Enchanté(e) !	Delighted!
tous les deux	both

Greetings and farewells

Ça va ?	Are things going well?
Ça va.	Things are fine.
Ça va très bien.	Things are going very well.
Ça ne va pas.	Things aren't going well.
Tu vas bien ?	Are you going well?
Vous allez bien ?	Are you going well? (formal)
Bonne journée !	Have a nice day!

COMMUNICATION

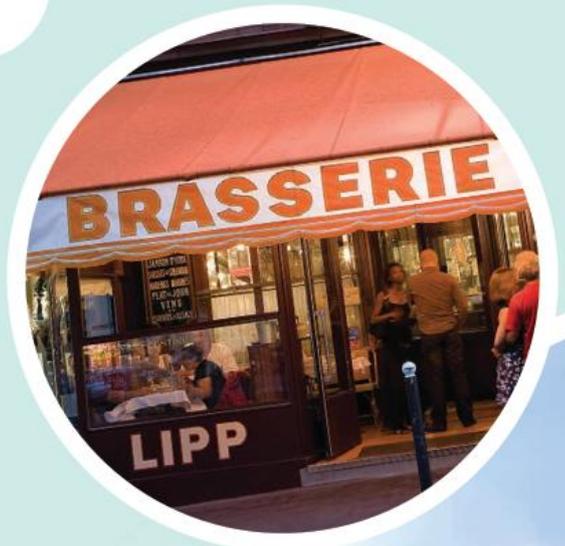
Now I know how to ...

- introduce myself and give my nationality
Je m'appelle...
Je suis australien(ne) / français(e) / anglais(e).
- welcome someone to my country
Bienvenue en Australie !
- greet people, respond to greetings and ask how someone is
Salut Julia ! Tu vas bien ?
Bonjour ! Vous allez bien madame Xavier ?
- accept an offer
Un café ? Un thé ?
Ah oui, un café s'il vous plaît !
- refuse an offer
Un café ? Un thé ?
C'est gentil, merci, mais pas aujourd'hui.
- ask someone if they know a person
Tu connais Élise ? Tu connais Christian ?
Vous connaissez madame Leclerc ?
- wish someone a good day, and say 'see you tomorrow'.
Bonne journée Nathan ! À demain !
Au revoir alors, et à demain Clara.

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- show the gender of a noun
- use the present tense of the verb *être*
- write a sentence in the negative form
- use the letters of the alphabet to spell words
- use adjectives in the masculine and feminine forms.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- What gestures do French people use when they greet each other?
- Why are there so many words of French origin in English?
- What is the most popular sport in France?
- Name two places in Paris where there is room to walk, jog and play sport.
- Name two famous cafés in Paris, and say why they are well known.

SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand how I would respond in certain situations.

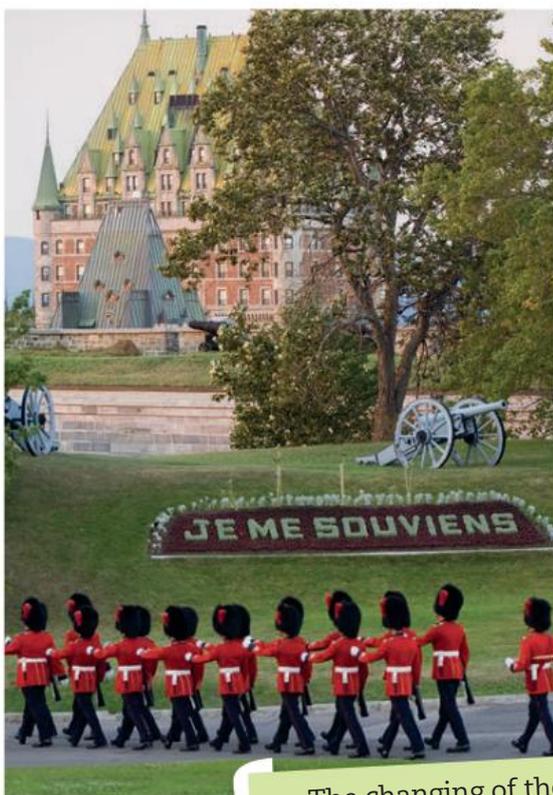
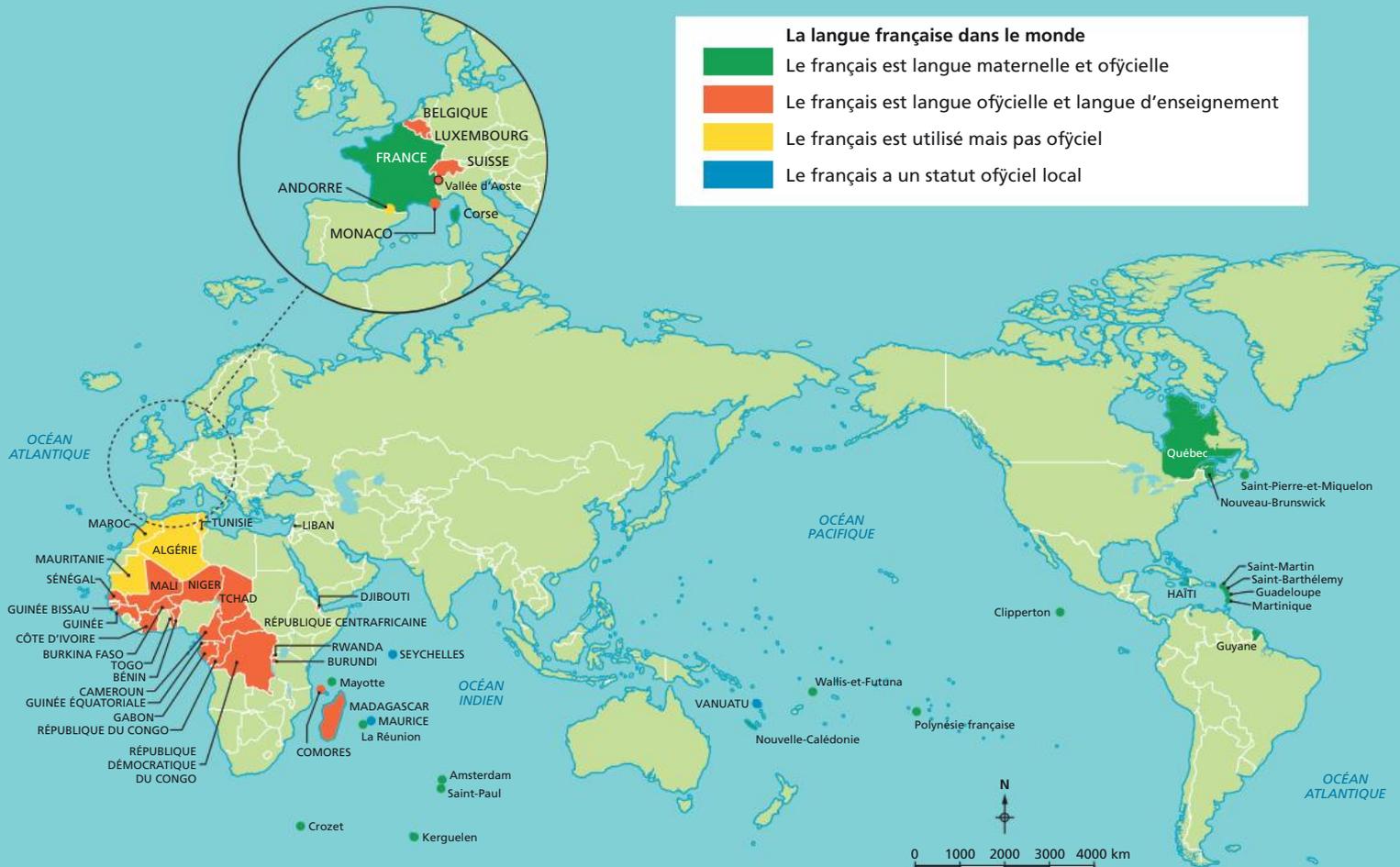
- You want to warn someone that an accident is about to happen. What do you say/do?
- You want to apologise for a clumsy action. What do you say/do?
- You want to welcome a visitor to your country. What do you say/do?
- You want to tell someone you have to leave because you are busy. What do you say/do?
- Your friend can't stop to have a coffee with you. What do you say/do?
- You want to use *tu* instead of *vous* with a friend. What do you say/do?
- You want to tell your friend you'll see them later on. What do you say?

À L'ACTION !

Watch the video of a group of friends playing football. In a group, create a scenario and make a short video clip of a similar situation. It could feature a different sport and, of course, different characters. Make it as original as possible.

OR

Draw a cartoon of a situation similar to the one above. You may like to make a multimedia presentation of your cartoon with voice-over. You can work alone or in a small group.



Alamy Stock. Photo/david.sanger photography

French is an official language or a major means of communication in more than 40 countries. The number of people who regularly speak French in these countries is over 200 million. Most of these countries are former French colonies, although some are overseas territories, mainly:

- **DOMs** – *départements d'outre-mer* (overseas departments), which are officially a part of France, with a similar status to all the other departments in metropolitan France. They are Réunion in the Indian Ocean, Guadeloupe and Martinique in the West Indies, and French Guiana on the north coast of South America.
- **TOMs** – *territoires d'outre-mer* (overseas territories), which include New Caledonia and French Polynesia in the Pacific. Overseas territories have more autonomy (the right of self-government) than the overseas departments. For example, New Caledonia has an independent education system and a curriculum that includes the teaching of indigenous languages.

The changing of the guard at La Citadelle, the residence of Canada's governor-general in Quebec City, the capital of Quebec. As you can see by the uniforms, this ceremony is based on the one at Buckingham Palace.

It is estimated that another 70 million people worldwide speak fluent French, having learnt it as a foreign language. French is studied all over the world, either in school or in one of the 900 or so Alliance Française cultural centres and Instituts français.

French is an official language of over 90 international organisations, sometimes the only official language, but mostly along with other languages such as English, Spanish, Arabic, Russian and Chinese. These organisations range from the United Nations (which has six official languages) to the International Court of Justice (French and English) and the International Federation of Roller Sports (French and English).

The umbrella organisation of French-speaking countries is the Organisation internationale de la Francophonie (OIF), which has 58 member states. However, for political and historical reasons some French-speaking countries, such as Algeria, are not members of the OIF but some non-French speaking countries, such as Bulgaria, are members.



This sign refers to the archaeological site of Tyre, on the southern coast of Lebanon. Tyre dates from 3000 bce and was originally a Phoenician city.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Look at the countries on the map. Do you know the English equivalents for them? (Some are the same, such as Mali and Burkina Faso.)

FIND OUT MORE

Answer the following questions using the maps in this book and the Internet.

- 1 There are three countries and one principality bordering France where French is an official language. What are they and what other languages are spoken in these countries?
- 2 There is another country bordering southern France where French is spoken in a small mountainous area. Which country is it and what is the area called?
- 3 There are two British territories in Europe where French is an official language. What are they? Why do you think French is an official language there? (Hint: Look at a map of the 'English' Channel.)
- 4 French-speaking countries and territories are closer than you may think! What are the two French-speaking countries/territories situated about 3 hours' flying time from the east coast of Australia? And what are the French-speaking countries/territories about 8 hours' flying time from Perth?



This sign in Benin, Africa, indicates the UNESCO World Heritage site of the royal palaces of Abomey, capital of the Kingdom of Dahomey (1625–1900).

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

French is a significant community language in Australia. How many French speakers do you know (apart from your teacher)? Maybe they are neighbours, shopkeepers or members of your family. Where do they come from? France? Canada? Lebanon? Egypt? Morocco? Mauritius? Have you said *Bonjour!* to them? Maybe they would like to tell you about their country and why they came to Australia.

Share this information with the rest of the class and find how many of your classmates know French speakers.

ENQUÊTE

Choose one francophone territory or country and conduct an in-depth study of it. Include the history of the territory or country, focusing on why it is French-speaking. Mention any other languages that are spoken there. Describe its geography, the size of the population, who the people are. Discuss the capital, and the main agricultural and industrial activities, the cuisine and any other information you find interesting. Include maps and photos in your report.

Ça, c'est ma famille

In this unit you will learn how to:

- talk about your family
- ask someone about their family
- use numbers 1–20
- talk about age (1–20)
- use possessives (my, your, his/her)
- say you like / don't like something.

You will also learn about:

- French families
- marriage in France
- the origin of French family names
- multicultural France.



A multicultural family



Three generations of a family enjoy lunch outside.



An extended family at home



Shutterstock.com/MyVango



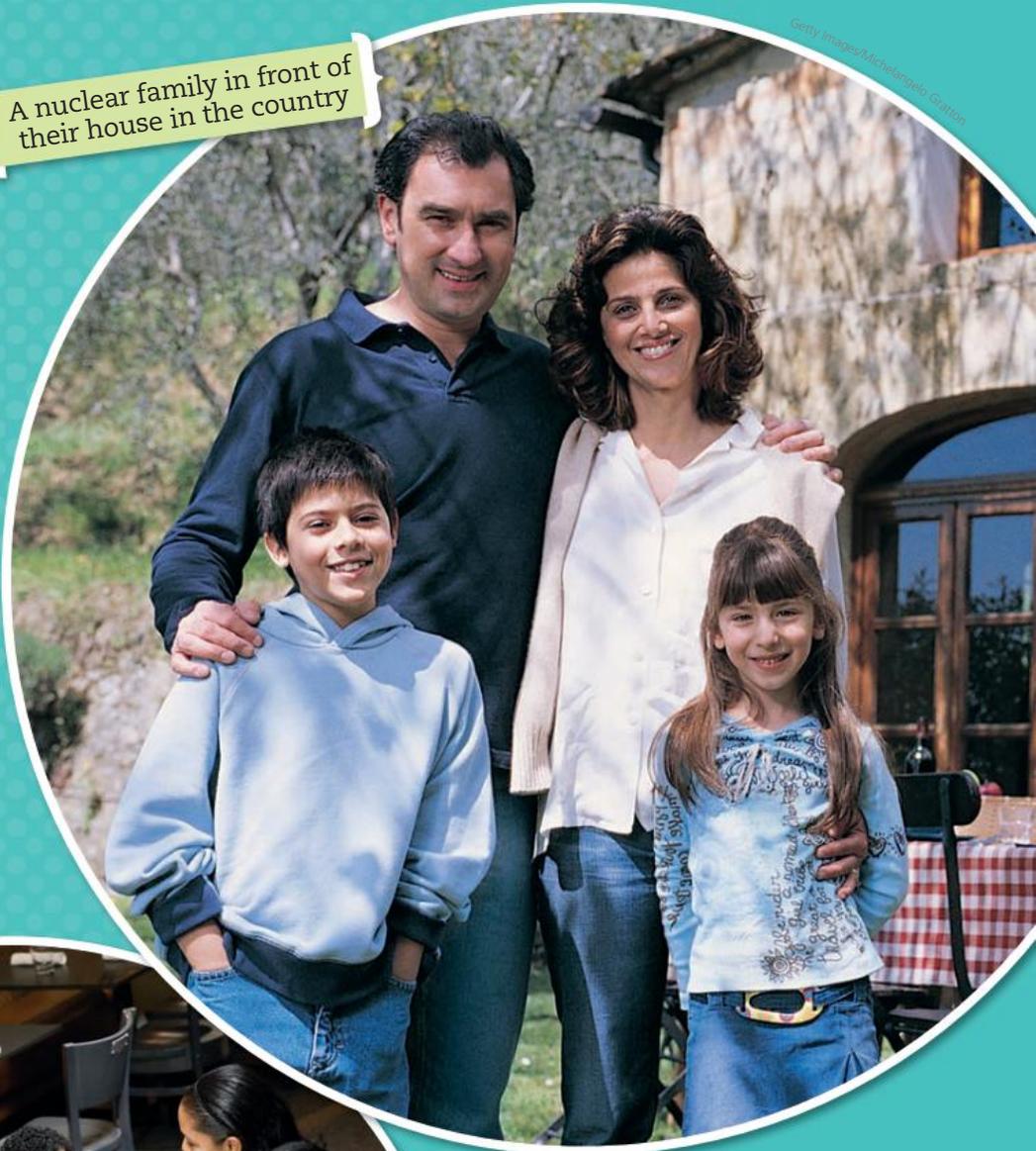
Shutterstock.com/MyVango

A French family of African descent



Shutterstock.com/ESA Professional

A nuclear family in front of their house in the country



Getty Images/Michela Paolo Gratton



Getty Images/Ambeross Ross

A family dining in a restaurant. French families often dress up when they eat out.



Sophie



Clara



Mme Lagarde



M. Lagarde



Guillaume

La famille Lagarde

Sophie visits Clara at her home, where she meets Clara's parents and younger brother. Sophie also learns about Clara's maternal grandparents and meets the family pets.

1

Sophie Bonjour Clara.
Clara Bonjour Sophie ! Entre.

Sophie Tes parents sont là ?
Clara Oui, ils sont dans le salon. Viens.

2

Clara Maman, papa, je vous présente ma copine Sophie.
Mme Lagarde Enchantée Sophie.
M. Lagarde Bonjour Sophie.
Sophie Bonjour madame, bonjour monsieur, enchantée.

3

Mme Lagarde Tu as des frères et sœurs, Sophie ?
Sophie Oui, j'ai un frère. Il s'appelle Liam.
Mme Lagarde Il a quel âge ?
Sophie Il a dix ans.
M. Lagarde Notre fils Guillaume a dix ans aussi.
Clara Il est dans sa chambre. Viens.

4

Guillaume Ououououououh !!!
Sophie Aaaahh !!!

5

Clara Guillaume !!! Tu es bête !!! Regarde, Sophie a peur !
Sophie Ça va. C'est pas grave. Mon frère Liam, il est comme ça aussi.
Clara Oui, les petits frères, ils sont insupportables !

6

Guillaume Pardon, Sophie. Je m'appelle Guillaume.
Sophie Enchantée Guillaume. Mais je n'aime pas ton masque.
Clara Viens, Sophie. Je prépare un thé ?
Sophie Un thé ? Oui, avec plaisir.



Sophie Ce sont tes grands-parents sur la photo ?

Clara Oui, papi et mamie, les parents de ma mère. Ils ont une petite ferme en Normandie.



Sophie Et la famille là, sur l'autre photo?

Clara C'est ma tante Yvonne et mon oncle Gabriel. Avec leur fill , ma cousine Sarah.

Sophie Ils habitent dans les Alpes ?

Clara Non, ils habitent au Québec. Gabriel est canadien.



Clara Et voilà Félix, notre chat, et Brutus, notre chien.

Sophie Le chat, il n'est pas content ?

Clara Non, ils ne sont pas amis.

Felix C'est vrai. Je déteste ce chien horrible... Il mange tout mon dîner.

Brutus Miam !

Et c'est délicieux !

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situation* using the audio recording as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogue.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do children in other countries always carry their father's surname or can they have their mother's family name? Or both? Do you think that children should always have their father's surname?



EN FRANCE

Most children in France automatically receive the surname of their father, whether the parents are married or not. This used to be necessary by law but it is no longer the case. Children can have the surname of their mother, their father or both. However, it is rare for them to have their mother's name.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

When talking about a family in French, we don't use a plural form for the name. For the Lagarde family we say *les Lagarde*, not *les Lagardes*; for the Dupont family we say *les Dupont*, not *les Duponts*. What do we say in English?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Introducing a friend to your family

Maman, papa, je vous présente ma copine Sophie / mon copain Nathan.

2 Saying you like/don't like someone or something

J'aime bien l'école.

Je n'aime pas ton chat.

Je déteste ce chien.

3 Talking about your family

A Tu as des frères et sœurs ?

B J'ai un frère et deux sœurs.

B Je suis enfant unique.

Vous avez des grands-parents ?

Tes parents sont là ?

Ce sont tes grands-parents sur la photo ?

C'est papi.

C'est mamie.

Voilà ma tante, mon oncle et ma cousine.

4 Les nombres de 0 à 10

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
zéro	un	deux	trois	quatre	cinq	six	sept	huit	neuf	dix

5 Les nombres de 11 à 20

11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
onze	douze	treize	quatorze	quinze	seize	dix-sept	dix-huit	dix-neuf	vingt

6 Saying how old people are (1–20)



A Elle a quel âge, ta sœur ?

B Elle a onze ans.

A Il a quel âge, ton frère ?

B Il a quinze ans.

A Tu as quel âge ?

B J'ai quatorze ans.

A Vous avez quel âge ?

B J'ai vingt ans.



Shutterstock.com/Oriodia

7 Pointing out something or someone



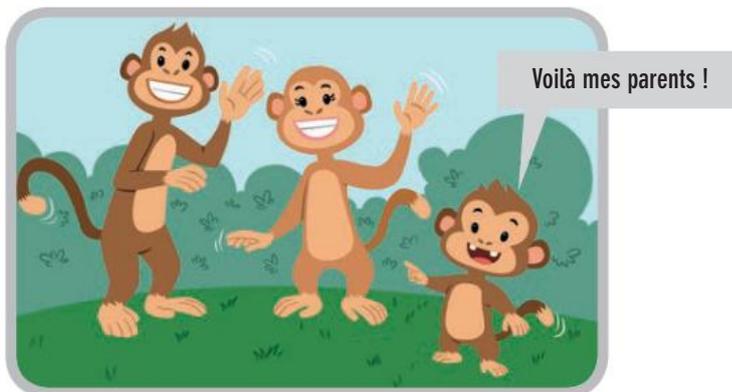
Voilà mon chat.

Voilà mes parents.

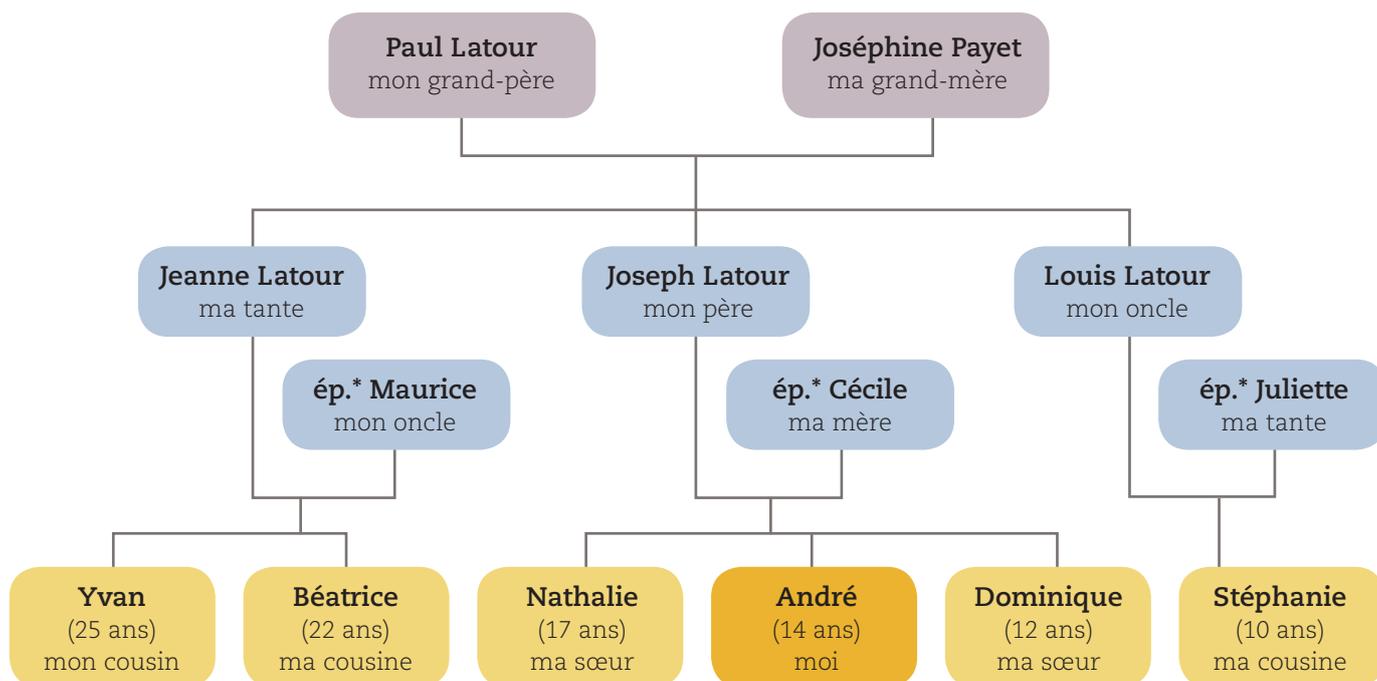
Voilà le terrain de foot.

Voilà Yassine.

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.



L'arbre généalogique d'André Latour



* époux / épouse

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH



C'est ton frère ? Ask and answer questions about the family relationships shown in the diagram.



Je vous présente...

EN PLUS !

These phrases are linked with the notion of 'family'. Find out what they mean. (You may need a dictionary.) Think of someone you know for each description.

- être de bonne famille – Il est de bonne famille.
- comme un frère – Jérémy, c'est comme un frère pour moi.
- enfant terrible – Ah, Ben ! Quel enfant terrible !

Textes de lecture

Qui suis-je ?

Read these short texts where the characters describe their relationships with other family members and work out who is talking.

Paul Latour est mon grand-père. Joseph Latour est mon père et Cécile Latour est ma mère. J'ai deux sœurs, Nathalie et Dominique. Qui suis-je ?

Joséphine Payet est ma mère. Louis Latour est mon frère. André est mon neveu et Nathalie et Dominique sont mes nièces. Qui suis-je ? Comment s'appellent mes enfants ?

Je suis le petit-fils de Paul et Joséphine. Joseph est mon oncle. André est mon cousin. Stéphanie est ma cousine. Ma mère s'appelle Jeanne et Béatrice est ma sœur. Qui suis-je ?

Je suis la belle-fille de Paul et Joséphine. Béatrice est ma nièce et Yvan est mon neveu. Cécile est ma belle-sœur. Qui suis-je ?

Une énigme

Un médecin et un jeune garçon sont dans un restaurant. Le garçon, c'est le fils du médecin. Mais le médecin n'est pas le père du garçon. Qui est le médecin ?

Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer les lettres *oi*



The *oi* combination in French is pronounced 'wa', as in *réservoir*, *croissant*, *au revoir*. Listen to the recording.

moi

toi

voilà

pourquoi

histoire

2 Comment prononcer la lettre *r*



This is a difficult sound to pronounce. Unlike the English 'r', it is pronounced from the back of the throat. There is no easy way to learn – you just have to keep practising it.

But perhaps even more important is to know when to pronounce it. In Australian and New Zealand English, we do not pronounce the 'r' at the end of a word (for example 'car', 'for', 'where', 'pour') or before another consonant ('sort', 'form', 'art', 'marble').

However, in French the letter 'r' is pronounced in these situations, and if you don't pronounce it people may not understand you. Now listen and practise saying the examples.

bien sûr

bonjour

d'accord

fort

garçon

histoire

merci

pourquoi

sportif

super

vert

Note that in the case of *vert* and *fort* you pronounce the 'r' but not the 't'.

3 Comment prononcer les lettres *qu*



Listen to the pronunciation of *qu* in the following words.

quel

qui

quatre

quatorze

quinze

marque

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

How do you pronounce the letters 'qu' in English (for example, **queen**, **quick**, **question**)? What is the difference between the English and French pronunciation of 'qu'?



Un peu d'histoire... C'est qui ?
Louis XIV ou Louis XV ? (Hint: He
was also known as le Bien-Aimé.)

Getty Images/Leemage

Grammaire

1 Le verbe *avoir*

This is the second most important verb in French.

Moi, j'**ai** un petit frère.

Toi, tu **as** des sœurs ?

Vous n'**avez** pas de famille ?

La famille de Clara **a** un chat et un chien.

Et vous, vous **avez** un chat, un chien ?

avoir (to have)			
j' ai	I have	nous avons	we have
tu as	you have (singular)	vous avez	you have
il a	he has	ils ont	they have (masculine)
elle a	she has	elles ont	they have (feminine)

Avoir is also used to talk about age in French.

Tu **as** quel âge ?

How old are you?

J'**ai** quatorze ans.

I'm fourteen.

Mon frère **a** quinze ans.

My brother is fifteen.

2 L'omission de *ne*

Rappel : The negative in French consists of two parts – *ne* and *pas* – which are placed either side of the verb:

Ils **ne** sont **pas** amis.

However, in daily conversation, the *ne* is sometimes left out, so that:

- *Ce n'est pas gentil* can be said as *C'est pas gentil*.
- *Ce n'est pas grave* can be said as *C'est pas grave*.

In written French, however, the *ne* should be included.

3 Les adjectifs possessifs

Just like the definite article (*le, la, les*), possessive adjectives (my, your, his, her, our, their) agree with the noun that follows, both in gender (masculine/feminine) and number (singular/plural).

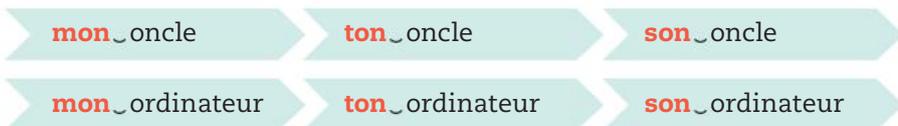
				
my	mon frère	ma sœur	mes frères	mes sœurs
your*	ton frère	ta sœur	tes frères	tes sœurs
his/her	son frère	sa sœur	ses frères	ses sœurs
our	notre frère	notre sœur	nos frères	nos sœurs
your**	votre frère	votre sœur	vos frères	vos sœurs
their	leur frère	leur sœur	leurs frères	leurs sœurs

* For someone that you would refer to as *tu*.
Tes parents sont là, sur la photo ?
 ** For more than one person, or someone you would refer to as *vous*.
Ce sont vos grands-parents ? Et là, c'est votre tante ?

|||||
LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

In English, the choice of a possessive adjective depends only on the owner – his brother, her brother. What are the four factors that influence the choice of a possessive adjective in French? (Refer to the table on the previous page.)

When the noun begins with a vowel or a silent 'h', we use *mon*, *ton* and *son* in the singular for both masculine and feminine nouns. In these cases, the 'n' is pronounced to make a 'liaison'. (See *Phonétique et graphie, Unité 4*.)



4 Rappel : tu et vous

When telling people to do something (for example, 'Look!'), the verb form changes depending on whom you're speaking to. If you are talking to a person with whom you use the *tu* form, you say *Regarde !* For a person with whom you use the *vous* form, and for more than one person, you say *Regardez !*



|||||
LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Look at the classroom orders in *Expressions* on page xii (for example, *Regardez, Écoutez*). This is what the teacher says when talking to the whole class.

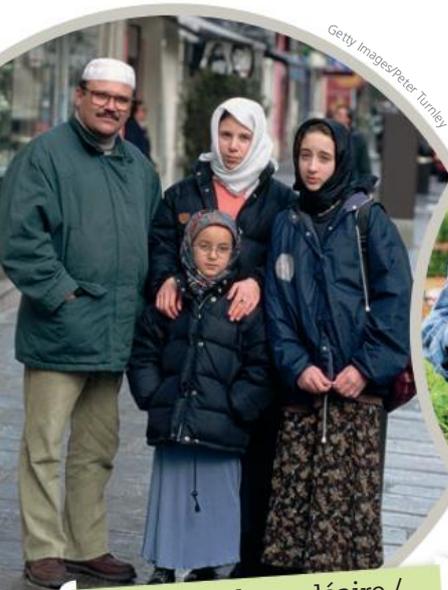
- What would the teacher say when talking to **one** student? What would you say when talking to **one** of your classmates?
- What would you say when asking your teacher to look at something?

La famille française

A French family may be classified in different ways. In a *famille traditionnelle*, the parents are married and the children belong to both of them. There is also the *famille recomposée*, with parents who have remarried after a divorce or the death of a spouse, and the children of their previous marriages. In a *famille monoparentale*, a single parent is in charge. In a *famille homoparentale*, the parents are of the same gender.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do you know of any types of marriage that were once not allowed (for reasons of race, colour, gender ...) but are now generally accepted?



une famille nucléaire /
une famille traditionnelle



une famille monoparentale



une famille nombreuse



une famille élargie



une famille recomposée



une famille homoparentale

Advantages of being a *famille nombreuse*

During the 20th century, the French government was concerned by the low birth rate. Approximately 1.5 million young French men were killed in the First World War and this made the problem worse. To encourage people to have more children, the concept of the *famille nombreuse* was formed. Any family with three or more children is called a *famille nombreuse*. These families receive an extra family allowance and a *carte de famille nombreuse*, which entitles them to concessions for public transport, education and other services.

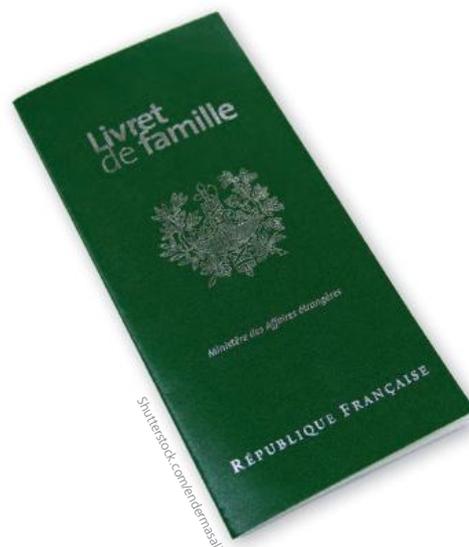
WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Are there laws in Australia to encourage people to have more children? Are there other ways to increase the population of a country?

The livret de famille

Whether married or not, French parents must have, as well as their personal identity cards, a *livret de famille*. This is a booklet in which the dates of birth of the parents and children, the dates of marriage, and the deaths of family members are all recorded and marked with official government stamps. This document was introduced because in 1870, during an uprising in Paris, the town hall was burnt down, and all records of births, deaths and marriages for the previous 400 years were destroyed.

In France, a church marriage alone is not recognised: all marriages must be registered at the town hall.



Un courriel de Clara à sa cousine

Envoyer Ajouter une pièce jointe Enregistrer le brouillon Outils Annuler

De : Clara_lagarde@yahoo.fr
 À : sarah_lagarde@gmail.ca
 Objet : Bonjour !

Bonjour Sarah ! C'est ta cousine ! Tout va bien ? La rentrée ? Et tes parents ?

Moi, ça va bien. J'ai une nouvelle camarade de classe. Elle s'appelle Sophie. Sophie Harvey. Elle est australienne de Melbourne. Elle est très sympa. 😊

Mes copains Nathan et Yassine sont très contents : elle aime le football. (Le vrai foot, pas le foot canadien !)

Mes parents, ça va bien aussi. Papa est à Singapour, alors maman est un peu triste.

Et Guillaume ? Il est insupportable. 😞

Situation normale... Non, mais je plaisante, il va bien. Et lui aussi il a un nouveau copain. C'est Liam Harvey, le frère de Sophie.

Voici des photos de famille (ci-jointes) : mon père, ma mère, moi et Sophie ; et notre chien, Brutus, et notre chat, Félix. (Ils sont mignons, non ?)

Grosses bises ! Et bises à toute la famille !

Clara





LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Can you work out the English translations of the buttons on the email interface? (You may need to use a dictionary.)

Family names in France

Many French family names were originally nicknames given to people for various reasons:

- names of places where they lived or were often seen – Delarue (street), Dupont (bridge), Dumoulin (mill), Rivière (river)
- names according to physical appearance – Petit (small), Legrand (tall), Legros (fat), Leblanc (white), Lebrun (brown)
- names according to moral characteristics – Vaillant (valiant, courageous), Doucet (gentle, kind), Lesage (wise)
- names of animals the person behaves like – Renard (cunning like a fox), Cocteau (proud, vain and aggressive like a rooster)
- names according to social position – Chevalier (knight), Maréchal (marshal), Évêque (bishop)
- first names that have become family names – Martin, Richard, Robert, Thomas and so on.

The variety of French family names has greatly increased because of the millions of people who have migrated to France over the years: Zidane (Algeria), Djité (West Africa), Oliveira (Portugal), Garcia (Spain), Poniatovski (Poland), Sarkozy (Hungary) ... and many more!

The top ten most popular family names in France are (1) Martin, (2) Bernard, (3) Thomas, (4) Dubois, (5) Durand, (6) Robert, (7) Moreau, (8) Petit, (9) Simon, (10) Michel.



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Does English or your native language have names like these? How many people do you know who have names with such origins?



FIND OUT MORE

What do you think are the most popular first names today in Australia and New Zealand? If you're not sure, you can find out online.

If you are interested in finding the origins of more French family names, try the *nom-famille* website.



Ma famille extraordinaire



Bonjour ! Je m'appelle Éric. Je présente... badaboum !! badaboum !! Ma famille extraordinaire !!!



Voilà mon père. Il est employé de banque. Mais sa vraie passion c'est le rap. Ma mère est championne régionale de karaté. Crac ! La table. Crac ! Crac ! Crac ! Les chaises. Haiyaaaaah ! Notre maison, c'est une ruine.



Ah ! Regardez. Ma grande sœur est dans la cuisine. Elle prépare le dîner.



Mes grands-parents ? Papi, c'est un fanatique de moto. Il est sur l'autoroute avec ses copains. À 200 kilomètres à l'heure !! Et mamie, elle adore le parachutisme !

Et moi, je suis vraiment normal. Mon activité favorite, c'est l'astronomie. Regardez mon télescope. Et j'ai des visiteurs. Des visiteurs... extra-terrestres !!! Hé, hé, hé !



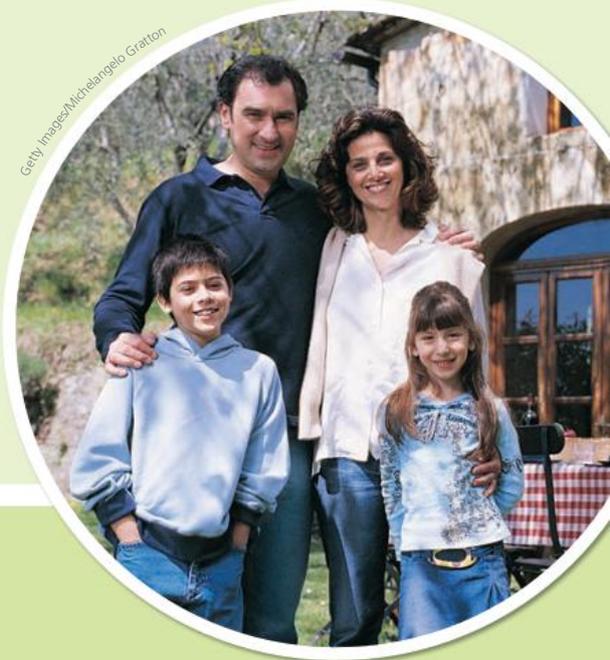
PROJET

What is the history of names in your family? Consider first names and surnames over the last two generations.

What do these names show about family origins? Do they suggest connections with other languages or places? Have your family names changed over the last two generations?

Present your findings to the class.

Getty Images/Michélangelo Gratton



VOCABULAIRE



Family members

le père	father
la mère	mother
les parents (mpl)	parents
le fils	son
la fille	daughter
le frère	brother
la sœur	sister
l'enfant (m/f) unique	only child
le grand-père	grandfather
la grand-mère	grandmother
les grands-parents (mpl)	grandparents
l'oncle (m)	uncle
la tante	aunt
le cousin / la cousine	cousin
le petit-fils / la petite-fille	grandson / granddaughter
le neveu / la nièce	nephew / niece
le beau-fils / la belle-fille	son-in-law / daughter-in-law
le beau-frère / la belle-sœur	brother-in-law / sister-in-law

Adjectives

insupportable	tiresome
délicieux / délicieuse	delicious
horrible	awful

Making comments about your family

Il est comme ça.	He's like that.
Il a dix ans.	He's ten years old.
Tu es bête !	You're silly!
Elle a peur.	She's scared.
Elle est un peu triste.	She's a bit sad.
Les petits frères sont insupportables !	Little brothers are unbearable!

Expressions of courtesy

Je te / vous présente...	Let me introduce ...
Enchanté(e).	Delighted (to meet you).
Viens.	Come.
Je prépare un thé ?	Shall I make a tea?
Oui, avec plaisir.	Yes, I'd like that.

Expressions of dislike

Je n'aime pas ton masque.	I don't like your mask.
Je déteste le chien.	I detest the dog.

Au parc zoologique

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and talk about animals (size, colour, characteristics)
- ask and talk about zoos
- talk about pet animals
- express preferences and opinions
- read and write a 'lost pet' notice.

You will also learn about:

- French zoos and their biozones
- the pet cemetery of Asnières
- French attitudes towards animals
- the popularity of pets in France
- Australian animals in France.



Visitors to the Parc Zoologique de Paris looking at penguins in the Patagonia biozone



Most dogs are faithful and patient creatures. They will wait a long time for their owners to turn up.

Pet owners like to show off their pets.





A hyacinth macaw in the Amazon-Guyana biozone at the Parc Zoologique de Paris. Guiana (Guyane) is a French territory in north-east South America.

Alamy Stock Photo/Henris



Alamy Stock Photo/MANDY GODBEHEAR



Pet owners will pay a lot of money for their pets to look attractive. But do the pets like it?

The Vincennes Zoo, now known as the Parc Zoologique de Paris, opened in 1934. From 2008 to 2014, it was closed for a total makeover, designed to allow the animals to live in a more natural habitat and to make people more aware of protecting animals and the environment. Five biozones were created, including a dry, arid area for African animals such as lions and giraffes and covered, heated jungle areas for tropical animals. There are no bars on the enclosures and in many cases the animals are viewed through a large glass panel so that they are not disturbed by people looking at them. The five biozones are known as Sahel-Soudan, Europe, Patagonie, Madagascar and Amazonie-Guyane.



Nathan



Yassine



Clara



Sophie



Gardienne

Au Parc Zoologique de Paris

Sophie, Clara and Nathan are waiting at the entrance to the zoo. Yassine arrives.



1

Nathan Salut Yassine. Ça va ?
Yassine Pas très bien.
 Samson est malade.

Clara Samson ?
Yassine Oui, mon chat. Il s'appelle Samson parce qu'il est grand et fort.



2

Sophie Samson, c'est ton seul animal ?
Yassine Non. J'ai un lapin, Gazou. Et deux perruches, Coton et Cocotte. J'ai aussi des poissons, mais ils n'ont pas de nom.
Nathan Mais tu as un zoo chez toi, Yassine !



3

Nathan Où est-ce que nous allons d'abord ?
Yassine Moi, je voudrais voir les éléphants.
Nathan Tu n'as pas d'éléphants chez toi ?
Yassine Non, l'appartement est trop petit.
Clara Voilà une gardienne. Madame, s'il vous plaît !

Gardienne Oui ?
Nathan Nous cherchons les éléphants, madame.
Gardienne Il n'y a pas d'éléphants ici. Nous n'avons pas assez de place. Nos animaux sont dans un habitat naturel.
Yassine Des hippopotames alors ? J'aime les hippopotames !
Gardienne Non plus.
Nathan Et des dinosaures ?
Gardienne Non, monsieur, je regrette. Tenez, voici un plan de notre jardin zoologique.
Sophie Regardez. Dans la biozone Soudan-Sahel, il y a des girafes, des lions et des singes.

4

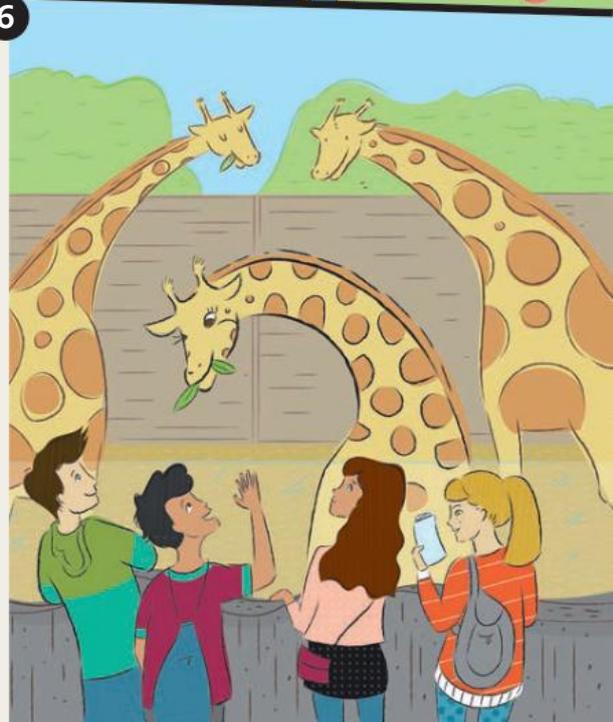


5

Sophie Ce sont des acrobates merveilleux.
Clara Ils sont drôles, n'est-ce pas ?
Nathan Et moi ?
Yassine CLIC !

Yassine Comment t'appelles-tu ?
Clara Les girafes ne parlent pas. Elles sont muettes.
Sophie Les animaux dans un zoo n'ont pas de noms.
Nathan C'est à nous d'imaginer les noms. Mmm... ah ! Géraldine la girafe !
Yassine Lionel le lion !
Clara Gaston le gorille !
Sophie Hé ! Elle a un nom, cette girafe. Elle s'appelle Adeline !

6



7



Yassine Voilà Lionel !
Sophie Il ne s'appelle pas Lionel. Son nom, c'est Nero.
Clara Il a l'air tranquille. Il est content ici.
Nathan Oui, parce qu'il a faim et il regarde le menu d'aujourd'hui.
Yassine Le menu ?
Nathan Nous !

8



Clara Il fait chaud ici !
Nathan Oui. C'est climatisé pour les oiseaux tropicaux.
Yassine Regarde le perroquet ! Noir, blanc et jaune. Il est beau !
Sophie Ce n'est pas un perroquet. C'est un toucan.
Yassine Ah bon ! Eh bien, les oiseaux de Paris ne sont pas comme ce toucan. Ils sont gris. Tout gris !
Nathan Ou tout brun !
Clara Ou tout noir !

9



Clara Quelle belle journée ! Tous ces beaux animaux dans un habitat naturel !
Sophie Mais ils sont en captivité. Ils ne sont pas libres.

10



Gardiennne Alors, jeunes visiteurs, comment trouvez-vous notre parc zoologique ?
Yassine C'est formidable, madame. Les oiseaux tropicaux sont magnifiques !
Nathan Excellent !
Clara Merveilleux !
Sophie Oui, c'est intéressant, je suis d'accord, mais est-ce que les animaux sont heureux ?

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situation* using the audio recording as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogue in sections.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Is there a zoo like this where you live?
- Do you think animals are happier and less stressed in this type of environment?
- Do you know of zoos that have more space than this one?
- Are zoos needed or should they be banned?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking about pets

A Qu'est ce que vous avez comme animaux à la maison ?

B Nous avons un chien, un chat et un lapin.

B Moi, je n'ai pas d'animaux à la maison.

2 Talking about pets and what they are like

A Voilà mon chien. Il s'appelle Brutus. Il est gentil !

B Et ça, c'est mon chat. Il s'appelle Samson. Il est grand et fort.

B Et puis mon petit lapin. Il s'appelle Gazou. Il est mignon.

3 Asking for an opinion

Alors, comment trouvez-vous notre parc zoologique ?

4 Talking about conditions for animals in a zoo

Il a l'air tranquille. Il est content ici.

Nos animaux sont dans un habitat naturel.

C'est climatisé pour les oiseaux tropicaux.

Les animaux sont en captivité. Ils ne sont pas libres.



Je ne suis pas un oiseau tropical !

5 Expressing a wish

Je voudrais voir le plan du zoo.

6 Offering something

Tenez, voici un plan du zoo.

7 Making a negative response politely 

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

Non, monsieur/madame, je regrette.

8 Describing animals 



un lion jaune



une girafe jaune et brune



un singe brun



un chat blanc



un oiseau gris



un toucan noir, blanc et jaune



un chien noir



un lapin blanc et brun



un poisson rouge

- petit(e)
- grand(e)
- mince
- gros(se)
- mignon(ne)
- laid(e)
- gentil(le)
- méchant(e)
- content(e)
- triste
- libre
- muet(te)

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

4.1  **Tu as un animal à la maison ?** Work in groups of three. Bring in photos or sketches of your pets, or two or three animals you would like as pets. Do not show them to your friends at first. In turn, ask each other about your pets (colour, size, personality, things they like to do). At the end of the questions, show each other the pets you have described.

4.2  **Une visite au zoo** Look at the pictures of zoo animals on the worksheet. You are two students visiting the zoo. As you encounter each animal, make comments about them, both negative and positive. At the end, comment on your visit.

classe 4  **Vrai ou faux ?**

EN PLUS !

- Read these expressions linked with animals. Can you think of any similar English expressions?
- être comme un poisson dans l'eau
 - avoir un caractère de cochon
 - manger comme un oiseau
 - être jaloux comme un tigre
 - avoir une faim de loup

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

How would you translate the expressions above into English?

Phonétique et graphie

La liaison



Listen to the pronunciation in the audio recording. What do you notice?

vous parlez	vous_s_avez
vous cherchez	vous_s_êtes
vous regardez	vous_s_aimez
vous préparez	vous_s_habitez



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why is the 's' in *vous* not pronounced in the left column but clearly pronounced in the right column?

With the help of your teacher, pronounce these expressions:

elles sont	elles_ont
ils sont	ils_ont
les professeurs	les_étudiants
des copains	des_amis
mon père	mon_ami

In French, most consonants at the end of words are not pronounced – they are silent. This is particularly the case for the plural *s*. For example, *taxi* and *taxis* are pronounced the same way. However, in many cases where the following word begins with a vowel – *a, e, i, o, u* – or a word beginning with silent *h* (e.g. *hôtel*), the final consonant, in most cases *s*, is pronounced. This is called **liaison** and can be indicated with the symbol ◡.



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Listen carefully for the examples of liaison as they occur in the dialogue on pages 48–9. How many examples did you find?

Grammaire

1 La forme plurielle des noms

Plural nouns are formed by adding an *s* or an *x* to the singular form:

s un chien → **p** des chiens

s un oiseau → **p** des oiseaux

If a singular noun ends with *al*, the ending changes to *aux* in the plural:

s un animal → **p** des animaux

un cheval



deux chevaux

2 Les adjectifs

Adjectives agree with the noun they describe, which means they generally change form according to whether the noun is masculine or feminine, singular or plural. You cannot always predict how the adjective will change, so when you learn an adjective you need to learn the different forms. On the other hand, as we saw in *Unité 2*, there are patterns; for example, when changing from the masculine to the feminine form.

Endings		Adjectives	
m	f	m	f
-ais	-aise	français	française
-ant	-ante	élégant	élégante
-eux	-euse	sérieux	sérieuse
-ien	-ienne	australien	australienne
-if	-ive	sportif	sportive
-on	-onne	bon	bonne

Some adjectives are irregular and do not follow any of the patterns, for instance:



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What are the plural forms of all the adjectives shown here, regular and irregular?

Some short, common adjectives come before the noun. Adjectives of colour follow the noun in French.

Je ne trouve pas mon **petit** chat **noir**.

J'ai un **grand** perroquet **rouge** et **vert**.

Je déteste ces **gros** chiens **noirs** et **blancs**.

3 Les verbes réguliers : verbes du premier groupe (-er)

You have already seen that the two most important verbs – *être* and *avoir* – are irregular. Fortunately, one large group of French verbs is regular, so we can predict the verb endings if we know they belong to this particular group. Here are three regular verbs from the -er group. Note that their endings follow the same pattern.

parler (to speak)	regarder (to look)	trouver (to find)
je parle	je regarde	je trouve
tu parles	tu regardes	tu trouves
il parle	il regarde	il trouve
elle parle	elle regarde	elle trouve
nous parlons	nous regardons	nous trouvons
vous parlez	vous regardez	vous trouvez
ils parlent	ils regardent	ils trouvent
elles parlent	elles regardent	elles trouvent

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What is the difference between a 'regular' verb and an 'irregular' verb in French?

For example:

Les girafes ne **parlent** pas.

Il **regarde** le menu.

Comment **trouvez**-vous notre zoo ?

La forme interrogative

You have already seen how to form a question by simply raising your voice at the end of a statement. So the same sentence can be a statement or a question, depending on the intonation. For example:

Ça va ?

Ça va.

Other examples include:

Ça va à l'école (?)

On y va, alors (?)

Tu es étudiant (?)

Elle est australienne (?)

You have also seen a question form where the subject and verb are inverted, and separated by a hyphen. This is a more formal way of asking a question.

Comment t'appelles-tu ?

Comment allez-vous ?

Qui est-ce ?

Qui suis-je ?

A third way of asking a question is to use *est-ce que* ('is it that ...?') at the beginning of the sentence:

Est-ce que les animaux sont heureux ?

Est-ce que vous êtes australienne ?

Est-ce que tu as des frères ?

The form *est-ce que* is part of the question *qu'est-ce que... ?*, meaning 'what?'

Qu'est-ce que vous aimez au parc zoologique ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What would be the most appropriate form for asking an adult you do not know if he or she is Australian? (Don't forget to use the *vous* form.)

Qu'est-ce que tu aimes
au parc zoologique ?



J'aime les kangourous !

Les biozones du Parc Zoologique de Paris

The Parc Zoologique de Paris is divided into five biozones, representing different natural environments on Earth. These five biozones are known as Sahel-Soudan, Europe, Patagonie, Madagascar and Amazonie-Guyane.

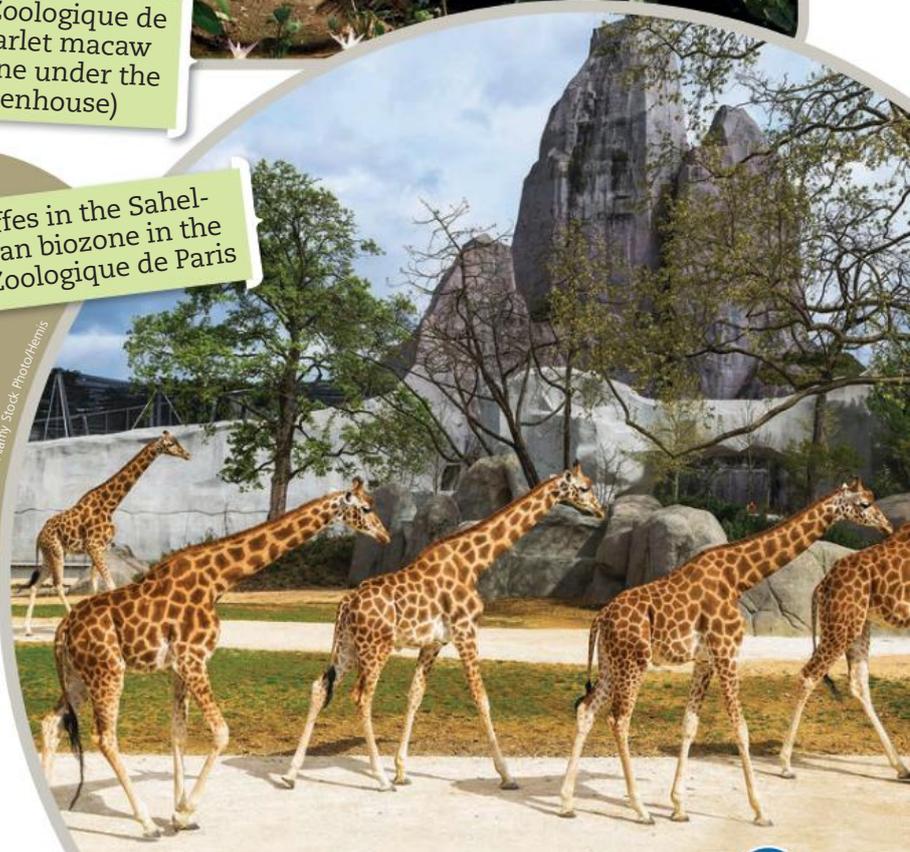


Visitors to the Parc Zoologique de Paris admiring a scarlet macaw in the Guyana biozone under the Grande Serre (greenhouse)

Alamy Stock Photo/Hemis

Giraffes in the Sahel-Soudan biozone in the Parc Zoologique de Paris

Alamy Stock Photo/Hemis



FIND OUT MORE

The five biozones in the zoo represent different places on Earth. Where are these places? What is the climate like there? What animals would you find there? Research the **Parc Zoologique de Paris** and see if you can find images of the biozones.

Une conversation téléphonique : Mais où est mon petit chat ?

Clara Allô ?
Nathan Bonjour Clara. Ça va ?
Clara Bonjour Nathan. Non, ça ne va pas du tout.
Nathan Ah bon ! Pourquoi ?
Clara Je ne trouve pas Félix.
Nathan Félix ?
Clara Mon petit chat. Il n'est pas dans la maison !
Nathan Il est dans la cour alors ?
Clara Non, il n'est pas dans la cour.
Nathan C'est triste. Tu prépares une annonce ?
Clara Oui, une annonce avec une photo.
Nathan Oui, une photo, c'est une bonne idée.
 Bonne chance !
Clara Merci Nathan...



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Read aloud the telephone conversation. Then role-play the conversation with a partner using another pet.



PERDU

FÉLIX,
petit chat noir de 2 ans

Numéro de tatouage :
HGB493

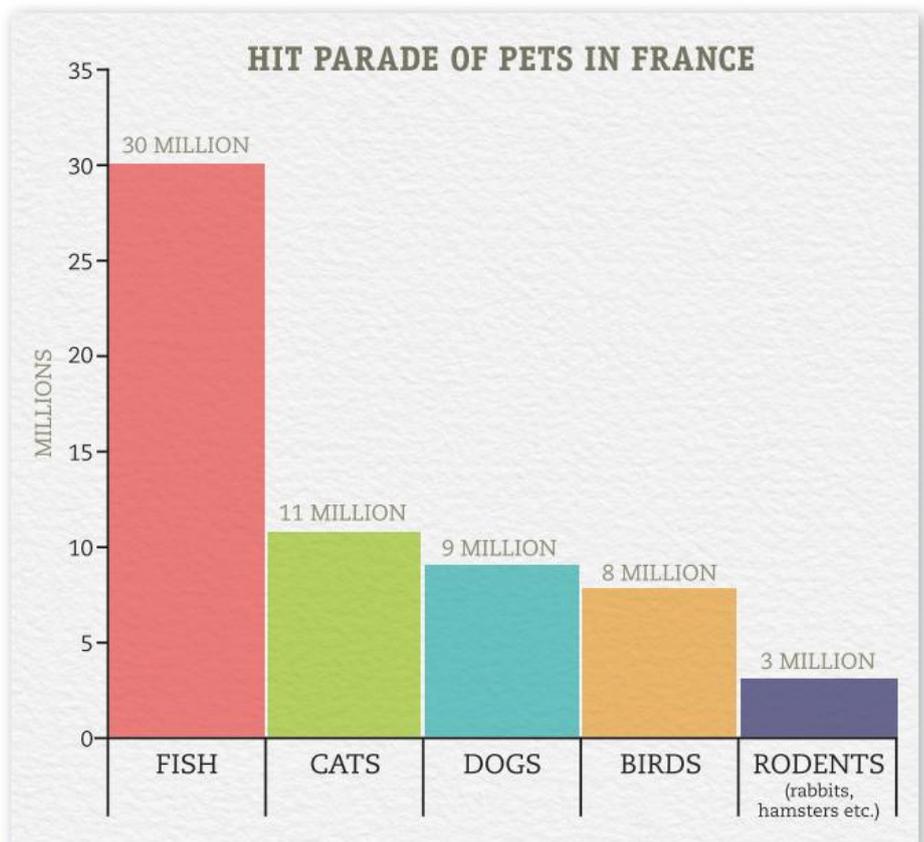
Si vous le trouvez,
merci de contacter
le 01 41 87 63 42

Les animaux de compagnie en France

France has a population of about 66 million. There are roughly 63 million pets in France – almost one for every French person. However, only one household in two has a pet, which means that most pet lovers have more than one pet.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why do you think there are so many pet fish? What are the most popular pets in your country?





There is no doubt that the French love their pets. They take their dogs to restaurants. They also spend a great deal of money on their pets' food, medication and accessories such as collars, electronic locators, coats, boots and beds. In some cases, dogs, particularly poodles, are given extreme-fashion haircuts.

However, not all pet owners take responsibility for their pets. Every year, 60 000 dogs and cats are abandoned in France, most of them during the summer holiday season. It is cheaper and easier to get rid of a pet than to take it on holiday.

The French SPA (Société pour la Protection des Animaux) rescues more than half of these pets, but many die from hunger or disease and many are euthanised.

Doing this is considered an act of cruelty and, if caught, the pet owner can be fined or sent to gaol. Unfortunately, very few are caught.



FIND OUT MORE

Compare the issue of abandoned pets in France with the situation in your country.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

This advertisement was created by the '30 Million Friends Foundation', which was set up to stop the abandonment of animals. Read the text and see if you can work out what it means and translate it into English.



Le Cimetière des Chiens



The Cimetière des Chiens is a cemetery for pets in the northern Paris suburb of Asnières. It is the world's first pet cemetery. Here you can visit the graves of thousands of faithful dogs and cats, or even canaries and parrots. Many of the graves have photographs of their occupants and bear loving inscriptions, such as *Ma petite Fifi loyale m'attend au ciel* (My little, loyal Fifi is waiting for me in heaven).

It was built following the introduction of a French law in 1898 that put a stop to the practice of Parisians burying pets where they liked or throwing the bodies into the rubbish or the river. The cemetery opened in 1899 and, over the years, more than 40000 animals have been buried there – not just dogs, but also cats, a racehorse, a lion, a monkey and domestic animals such as rabbits, hamsters, mice, birds and fish.

In the cemetery you will find a large monument to Barry (the world's most famous rescue dog), a tomb for police dogs, and a monument to the 40000th animal buried within the cemetery's walls (a stray dog that was run over by a car near the cemetery gates in 1958). You will also see plenty of living cats, who live in a shelter on the grounds and like to sun themselves on the tombs.

Dernières Nouvelles

KANGOUROUS SAUVAGES DANS LA FORÊT DE RAMBOUILLET !

Yes, believe it or not, there are 150 or more kangaroos (wallabies actually) living in the Rambouillet Forest, just south of Paris. But don't worry, they are not attacking people or other animals! *Sauvage* here means 'wild'; that is, living free in the wild rather than in captivity.

About 30 years ago, a group of Tasmanian wallabies escaped from a private zoo near Rambouillet Forest and made their home there. Since they are from Tasmania, they thrive in the cool climate.

The wallabies' main source of danger is motor cars. French drivers who hit a wallaby and damage their car are not happy – they have trouble collecting insurance because the insurers rarely believe them.



This sign doesn't tell the whole story!

Animals of all kinds have always had a symbolic significance for humans. Animals are used to represent most countries; for example, the kangaroo for Australia, the kiwi for New Zealand and the rooster for France. India has sacred animals – not only the cow, but also the crocodile, the elephant and others. The Chinese zodiac has 12 specific animals: rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon, snake, horse, goat, monkey, rooster, dog and pig.

Animals have been the source of legends and fairytales in many countries. Some of these stories include *The Three Little Pigs* and *The Tortoise and the Hare*. The French writer Jean de la Fontaine wrote *Le Corbeau et le Renard* (The Crow and the Fox); Charles Perrault wrote *Le Chat Botté* (Puss in Boots). The Rainbow Serpent story features in the Dreaming stories of many Indigenous Australian nations.

Working in a group or on your own, select a country, choose one of its legends in which an animal is actively symbolic, and present it to the class.

VOCABULAIRE



Animals in the zoo and at home

les animaux (mpl)	animals
l'éléphant (m)	elephant
l'hippopotame (m)	hippopotamus
le dinosaure	dinosaur
la girafe	giraffe
le lion	lion
le singe	monkey
le toucan	toucan
le kangourou	kangaroo
un animal de compagnie	pet
le perroquet	parrot
l'oiseau (m)	bird
le lapin	rabbit
le poisson rouge	goldfish
le chat	cat
le chien	dog
la perruche	budgerigar, budgie

Ways of describing animals

merveilleux (-euse)	marvellous
drôle	funny
muet(te)	mute, making no sound
tranquille	tranquil, calm
libre	free
beau (belle)	handsome, beautiful
méchant(e)	nasty
gentil(le)	kind, gentle
noir(e)	black
blanc(he)	white
jaune	yellow
gris(e)	grey
brun(e)	brown
rouge	red
mince	thin
gros(se)	big, large
laid(e)	ugly
petit(e)	small
grand(e)	tall, big

Some useful verbs of action

parler	to speak, to talk
regarder	to look
manger	to eat
aimer	to like
détester	to dislike very much
trouver	to find

Useful words and expressions

Je voudrais voir...	I would like to see ...
Tenez, voici un plan...	Look, here's a map ...
Non, monsieur, je regrette.	No, sir, I'm sorry.
C'est à nous d'imaginer les noms.	It's up to us to imagine the names.
Il a faim.	He's hungry.
Il fait chaud.	It's hot.
Quelle belle journée !	What a lovely day!

COMMUNICATION

Now I know how to ...

- introduce friends to my family
Maman, papa, je vous présente ma copine Sophie / mon copain Nathan.
- talk about family
**Tu as des frères et sœurs ?
J'ai un frère et deux sœurs.
Je suis enfant unique.
Vous avez des grands-parents ?
Voilà ma tante, mon oncle et ma cousine.**
- talk about age
**Tu as quel âge ? J'ai quatorze ans.
Vous avez quel âge ? J'ai vingt ans.**
- say I like or don't like someone or something
**J'aime bien l'école.
Je n'aime pas ton chat.
Je déteste ce gros chien.
J'adore les perruches.**
- ask about pets
**Qu'est-ce que vous avez comme animaux à la maison ?
Nous avons un chien, un chat et un lapin.
Moi, je n'ai pas d'animaux à la maison.**
- talk about characteristics of pets
**Voilà mon petit chien noir. Il s'appelle Brutus.
Il est gentil.
Et ça, c'est mon chat. Il s'appelle Samson.
Il est grand et fort.
Et puis mon petit lapin. Il s'appelle Gazou.
Il est mignon.**
- talk about living conditions for animals
**Nos animaux sont dans un habitat naturel.
C'est climatisé pour les oiseaux tropicaux.
Cet animal a l'air tranquille. Il est content ici.
Les animaux sont en captivité. Ils ne sont pas libres.**
- ask for an opinion.
Alors, comment trouvez-vous notre parc zoologique ?

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- use possessive adjectives (my, your, his, her)
- use the present tense of the verb *avoir*
- conjugate regular verbs ending in -er (e.g. *regarder*)
- ask questions using a range of forms
- use a range of adjectives in masculine and feminine forms, and in the correct position.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- What are the different types of families in France?
- What is a family entitled to in France if there are three or more children?
- What are some of the origins of French family names?
- What is recorded in a *livret de famille*?
- What are the favourite animals the French have as pets?
- What is the name of the French society for rescuing abandoned pets?
- Where is the famous dog cemetery in France?
- Why was this cemetery established?
- What other animals are buried there?

SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand how I would respond in certain situations.

- You want to ask a classmate their age. What would you say?
- Now you want to ask an adult what their nationality is. How would you ask this?
- You have been offered a drink you don't want. How would you refuse politely?
- You suggest going somewhere with friends. How would you say 'Let's go, shall we?'
- You want to ask a group their opinion on something, such as the Paris zoo. What would you say?
- Your pet is missing. What would you put on a public notice?



À L'ACTION !

Watch the video of a family discussing adopting a puppy. Then create a short video clip in which two people are asking the salesperson about the pets they might like to buy.

OR

Present a role-play in class in which two or three young people are looking at animals advertised in a magazine or on a website and deciding which one(s) they would like to own.



Bon appétit !

In this unit you will learn how to:

- order food and drinks in a restaurant
- express likes and dislikes
- talk about being hungry
- accept or refuse offers of food and drink
- express thanks for a meal
- propose a toast.

You will also learn about:

- French meals and menus
- French food preferences
- French provincial dishes
- events to celebrate good food in France.



La Favorite, a modern brasserie in the Rue de Turbigo in Paris



Le gratin dauphinois, a dish of thinly sliced potatoes baked with cream



A bowl of soupe à l'oignon, a traditional dish in Paris

Alamy Stock Photo/Quadratische Zeitung Photo

Fouquet's restaurant on the Champs Élysées in Paris was founded in 1899. It is one of the most reputable restaurants in France – and also quite expensive!



Getty Images/Frederic Stevens

Restaurant Duclos

A typical French carte (menu)

Entrées

Soupe à l'oignon
Pâté de foie gras
Pâté de campagne
Terrine de porc
Cuisses de grenouille

Taboulé
Salade de tomates
Œufs mayonnaise
Salade niçoise
Champignons farcis

Plats

Pizza tomates et olives
Bifteck frites
Poisson à la normande
Rôti de bœuf avec légumes

Châteaubriand
Quiche lorraine
Côte de porc avec purée de pommes

Desserts

Glaces
Tartes aux pommes

Boissons

Vin rouge/rosé/blanc
Eau minérale
Jus de fruit

Restaurant Duclos • 8, rue de Valence • Paris 11^e
Réservations : 01 50 55 55 51 — Service tous les jours



Romain Meder, chef at the prestigious Plaza Athénée restaurant in Paris, during the Michelin Awards ceremony in 2016. Meder and the Plaza Athénée were awarded 3 stars (3 étoiles), Michelin's highest award for haute cuisine.



Garçon



M. Lagarde



Mme Lagarde



Mr Harvey



Mrs Harvey



Sophie



Liam



Clara



Guillaume

Bon appétit !

M. and Mme Lagarde have invited Mr and Mrs Harvey and their children to dinner to celebrate M. Lagarde's promotion from first officer (*copilote*) to captain (*commandant de bord*). The Lagarde children, Clara and Guillaume, are also there.

1

Garçon Désirez-vous un apéritif ?
M. Lagarde Non merci. La carte, s'il vous plaît.
Garçon Très bien, monsieur.

2

M. Lagarde Je recommande les cuisses de grenouille. Elles sont excellentes ici.
Mr Harvey Oh oui ! J'aime beaucoup les cuisses de grenouille !
Mrs Harvey Ah bon ? Oh mon Dieu !

Sophie Les pauvres grenouilles !
Clara J'adore les cuisses de grenouille !
Liam Les cuisses, elles sont vertes, comme Kermit ?

3

Garçon Je suis désolé, messieurs-dames. Nous n'avons pas de cuisses de grenouille ce soir.
Mr Harvey Quel dommage !
Mrs Harvey Oui, c'est vraiment dommage.
Ouf ! Heureusement !

4

Mme Lagarde Alors, les garçons, vous avez faim ?
Guillaume Moi, j'ai une faim de loup.
Liam Moi aussi. Grrrrr !

5

Mrs Harvey Moi, je voudrais une soupe à l'oignon et puis... le poisson à la normande.
Mr Harvey Pour moi, la terrine de porc et puis le rôti de bœuf avec des légumes.
Mme Lagarde Moi, je prends le pâté.
Garçon Le pâté de foie gras ?
Mme Lagarde Oh non ! Le pâté de campagne.
M. Lagarde Et pour moi le taboulé. Comme plat principal... euh... le châteaubriand pour deux, chérie ?
Mme Lagarde Oui, volontiers.

6



Garçon Alors, monsieur Le Loup ?
Liam Une salade de tomates, s'il vous plaît. Et comme plat principal une pizza tomates et olives.
Garçon Ah ! Un loup végétarien !
Guillaume Pour moi, des œufs mayonnaise. Et un bifteck frites.

Garçon Mesdemoiselles ?
Sophie Moi, je prends une salade niçoise et une quiche lorraine.
Clara Des champignons farcis et une côte de porc avec de la compote de pommes.

7



Garçon Et comme boissons ?
M. Lagarde Un Bourgogne... euh... une bouteille de Nuits Saint Georges.
Guillaume Et deux Coca...
Mme Lagarde Deux jus d'orange pour les enfants. Sophie et Clara ?

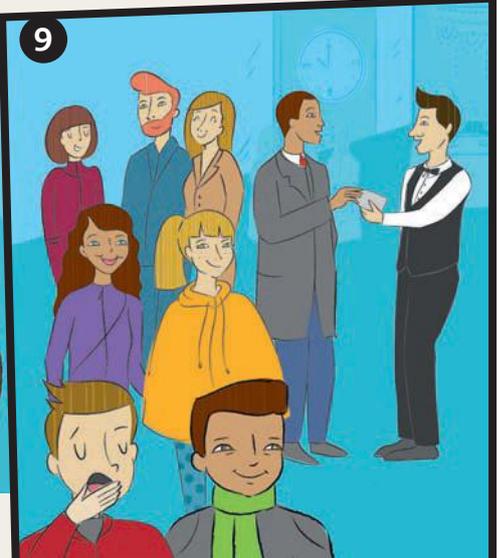
Clara De l'eau minérale.
Sophie Moi aussi.
M. Lagarde On commande les desserts plus tard, si vous voulez bien.
Garçon Très bien.

8



Mrs Harvey Merci pour ce dîner délicieux, Jean-Pierre !
M. Lagarde Tout le plaisir est pour moi.
Mr Harvey Et maintenant, je voudrais proposer un toast. Au Commandant de bord Lagarde !
All except Guillaume Au Commandant de bord Lagarde !
Guillaume À mon papa, Commandant de bord !

9



Garçon Félicitations, Commandant ! Au revoir messieurs-dames ! À bientôt, j'espère !
All Au revoir !



EN FRANCE

'Doggy bags' have long been frowned on in France as a foreign custom showing bad manners. However, in a move to cut food waste, restaurants are now legally obliged to provide these bags if requested by diners. Many chefs detest the term 'doggy bag' because it seems to imply that their food is only fit for dogs. The restaurant industry union has suggested a more acceptable français term, *le gourmet bag*.



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situation* using the audio recording as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogue in sections.



REFLECT AND CREATE

With the help of your teacher, work out what kinds of dishes the Lagarde and the Harvey families ordered at the restaurant. When you have done that, write down your own preferences for an evening meal. What would you have ordered from the waiter?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking for the menu

La carte, s'il vous plaît.



2 Asking if someone would like a drink

Désirez-vous un apéritif ?

Et comme boisson ?

3 Accepting the offer

Volontiers !

Je veux bien.

4 Refusing the offer

Non, merci.

5 Recommending a particular dish

Je recommande les cuisses de grenouille.

Elles sont excellentes ici.

6 Apologising for the lack of an item on the menu

Je suis désolé(e), nous n'avons pas de cuisses de grenouille ce soir.

7 Expressing likes and dislikes

J'aime beaucoup les cuisses de grenouille !

Moi, je déteste le taboulé.

Elle adore les escargots.



8 Giving your order



Moi, je voudrais la soupe à l'oignon et le poisson à la normande.

Moi, je prends le pâté de campagne.

Et pour moi, comme plat principal, le châteaubriand, s'il vous plaît.

9 Thanking the host for the meal



A Merci pour ce dîner délicieux !

B Tout le plaisir est pour moi.



10 Proposing a toast



Et maintenant je voudrais proposer un toast ! Au Commandant de bord Lagarde !

Here are other forms of toasts frequently made:

Santé !

À votre santé !

À l'amitié !

Tchin-tchin !

REFLECT AND CREATE

Imagine a situation when these toasts would be appropriate. (You may need to use a dictionary.)

Vive les mariés !

Félicitations !

Bienvenue chez nous !



11 Accepting or refusing a drink or food



A Un thé ?

B Oui, volontiers.

A Un café ?

B Non, merci.

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Look at this short exchange in French and English.

Un café ? – Coffee?

Merci. – Thanks.

'Merci, oui' ou 'Merci, non' ?

Can you see the difference? In English, when you say 'thanks', the person assumes you want a coffee. In French, however, if you simply say 'merci', the person may think you don't want one.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH



5.1 *La carte, s'il vous plaît ?* Work in groups of four or six. Using the menu and the dialogue in the worksheet, take turns to be a waiter and a restaurant customer ordering a full meal and drinks while the others in the group listen. Make sure you play all the roles.



5.2 *Vous aimez le jus d'orange ?* Work in groups of four. Take turns asking each other what foods or drinks you like.

– *Qu'est-ce que tu aimes boire ?*

– *Moi, j'adore le Coca-Cola ! Et toi ?*



Qu'est-ce que nous avons au menu ?

EN PLUS !

Here are some common French expressions that use food (or drink) imagery, but don't always expressly relate to food. Find out their meaning and give an example of when they might be used.

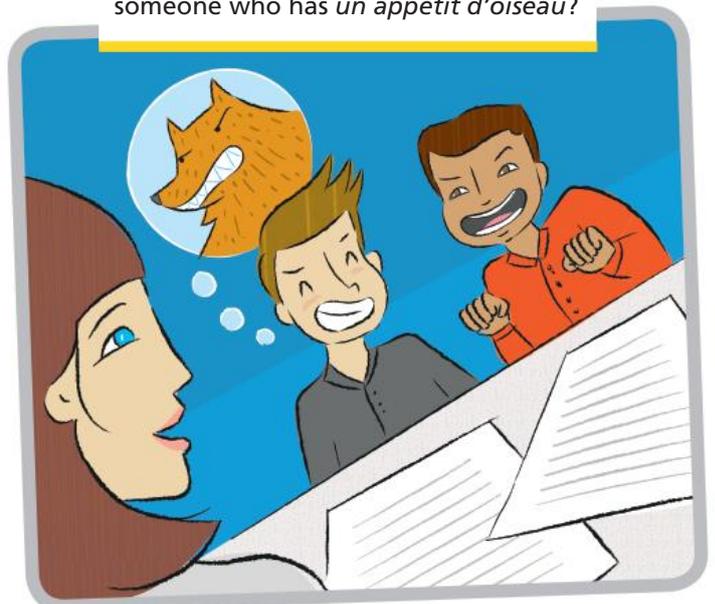
J'ai l'eau à la bouche.

La moutarde me monte au nez.

J'ai du pain sur la planche.

FIND OUT MORE

Guillaume was very hungry – *J'ai une faim de loup*. How would you describe someone who has *un appétit d'oiseau*?



Phonétique et graphie

Comment prononcer *ou*, *eu* et *au* / *eau* / *ô*

When you look at French people talking, they often round their lips and push them forward. There are several sounds in French for which you need to round your lips and push them forward. Two of these sounds are generally written as *ou* and *eu*. The third sound can be written in three ways: *au*, *eau* or *ô*. (Note that in French, like in English, the same sound is often spelt in several ways – think of ‘their’, ‘there’ and ‘they’re’, or ‘so’, ‘sow’ and ‘sew’.) Listen to the audio to hear how the following words are pronounced.

ou	vous	où	cours	bonjour
deux	affreux	bleu	cheveux	
au	beau	hôtel		

Try saying these sounds or words several times. If your lip muscles start to hurt, you’re probably pronouncing the sounds correctly. It’s easy for French people because they’ve been doing this since they were babies!



LET’S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

When English speakers start to learn French, they often get the impression that some French vowels are the same as English ones. For example, *tout* might sound like ‘two’. This is **not** the case – they are two very different sounds, and that is why you have to practise a lot to achieve the correct French pronunciation.

These pairs of words may also sound the same:

- hôtel* – hotel
- l’eau* – low
- Oh!* – Oh!
- beau* – bow (as in ‘bow and arrow’)

However, with the French vowel sound, you must round your lips and not move your tongue.

The English sound is very different: your lips are not rounded and your tongue moves, gliding from one vowel to another. To get it accurate, to sound more French, you have to practise, practise, practise!



Grammaire

1 L'article partitif (*du, de la, de l', des*)

When talking about liking or disliking certain foods and drinks in French, you must include an expression meaning 'some' or 'any'. This expression is formed by using the preposition *de* + the definite article (*le, la, l', les*). (In English, 'some' or 'any' are often left out.)

de + le = du	→	J'aime manger du poulet.
de + la = de la	→	Vous aimez boire de la limonade ?
de + l' = de l'	→	Il n'aime pas boire de l' eau minérale.
de + les = des	→	Tu aimes manger des cuisses de grenouille ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- What four forms can we have in French when the preposition *de* occurs in front of a noun?
- Why do we have four different forms?

2 Phrases descriptives

When describing what a food or drink is made of, a description can be formed by using the preposition *à* + the definite article (*le, la, l', les*) + noun.

à + le = au	→	les sandwichs au jambon
à + la = à la	→	le poisson à la normande
à + l' = à l'	→	la soupe à l' oignon
à + les = aux	→	la tarte aux pommes

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

How would you translate these seven French examples of food and drink into English?

In the expressions below, the description is formed by the preposition *de* + noun.

un jus de fruits	des cuisses de grenouille	une salade de pommes de terre
-------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

3 Le verbe au présent + l'infinitif

In French, when two verbs are used together, the second verb takes the form of the infinitive. The infinitive is the base form of the verb and always ends in *-er, -ir* or *-re*.

J'**aime manger** du pâté de foie.
I like **eating** liver pâté.

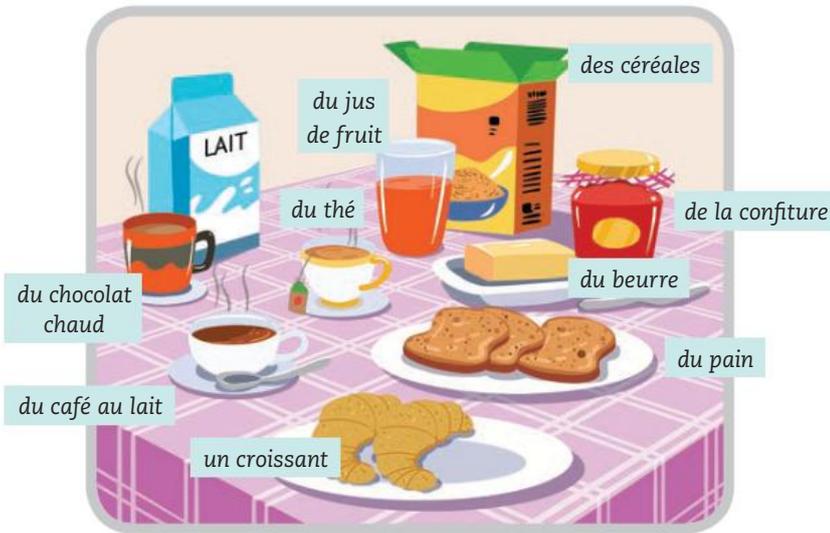
Elle **aime boire** du jus d'orange.
She likes **drinking** orange juice.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

There are two possible ways of translating these two French expressions into English. What are these translations?

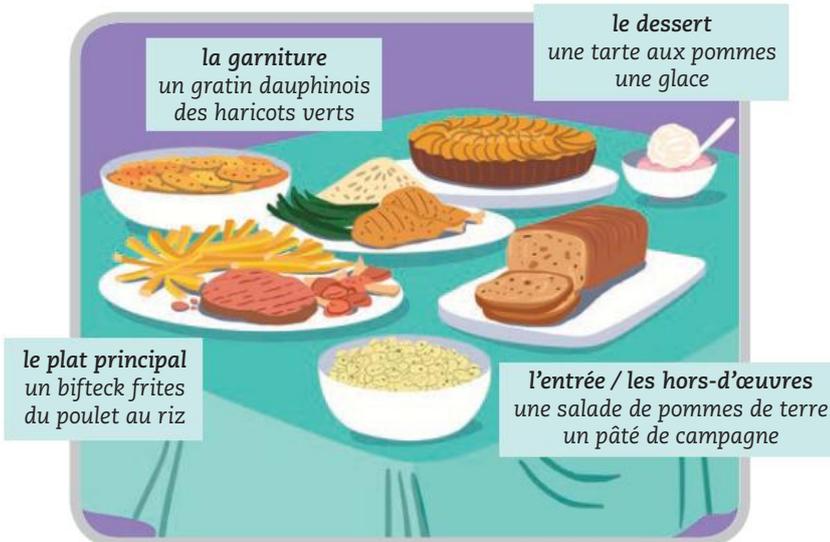
Que mangent les français ?

Le petit déjeuner (7–8 a.m.)

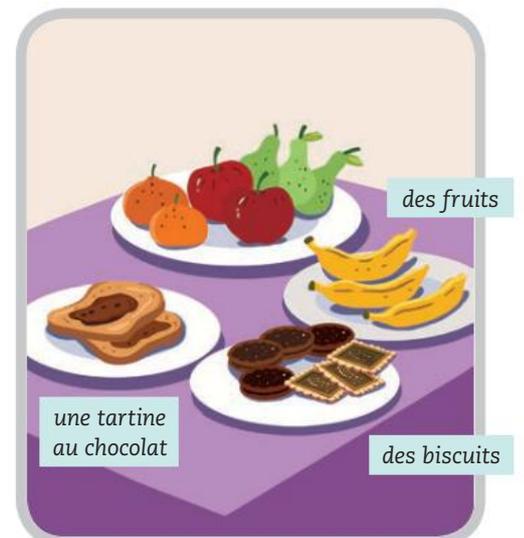


French people have various dietary habits. Some have a big lunch and a light evening meal, while others eat a small lunch and a full dinner. If people have guests or go out to eat at night, they will normally have a full dinner.

Le déjeuner (12–2 p.m.)



Le goûter (4 p.m. / après l'école)

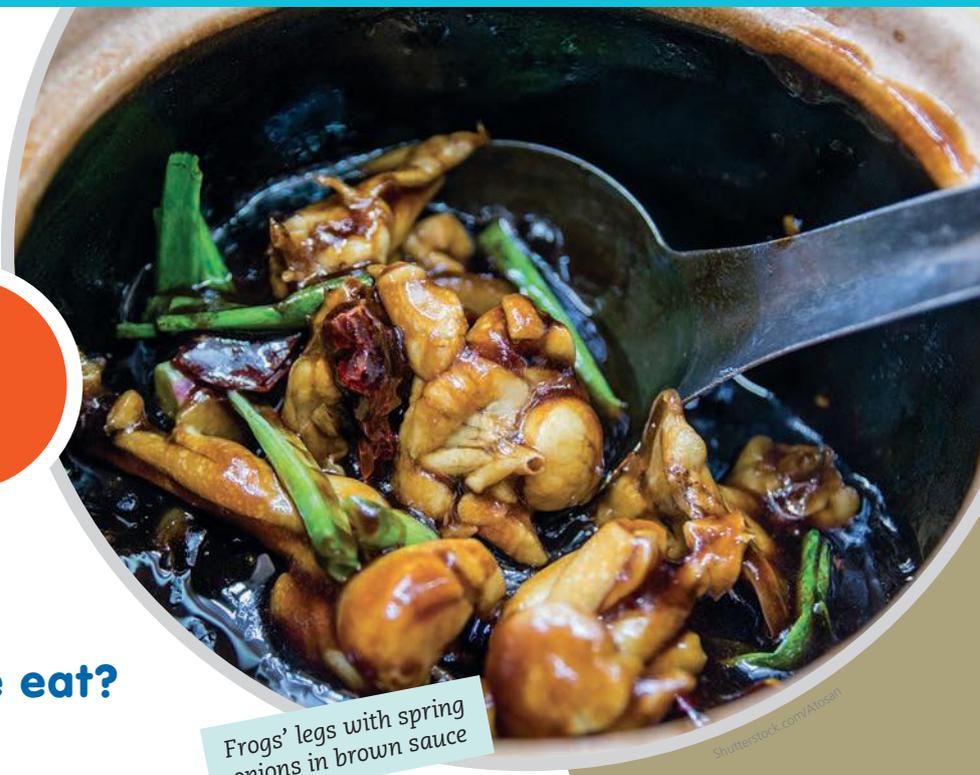


Le dîner (léger) 7–9 p.m.



Boissons





Frogs' legs with spring onions in brown sauce

What do French people eat? Myth and reality

Les cuisses de grenouille

The English called the French 'frogs' or 'froggies' because they 'ate frogs'. That wasn't quite true. The French didn't eat the whole frog, they ate frogs' legs or, to be more precise, frogs' thighs (*des cuisses de grenouille*) because that's where all the meat is.

In reality, frogs' legs are not an important part of the French diet. They are a rather expensive delicacy, mainly served in upmarket restaurants, and there are many ways of cooking them. Frogs' legs are eaten all over the world. They are a popular dish in China, India and South-East Asia, and also in Italy, Spain, Greece and other European countries.

Most frogs' legs eaten in Europe are imported from Asia. Indonesia is the world's largest exporter of frogs' legs.

Frogs' legs taste a bit like chicken or fish. In South-East Asia, frog meat is sometimes referred to as *ayam padi* (*padi* chicken) because frogs live in *padi* (rice) fields.

And in the United Kingdom?

Cooked bones of frogs' legs have been discovered by archaeologists in Wiltshire dating back to 7000 BCE. So it seems that Britons started eating them before the French!

How about snails?

For snails, the situation is much the same as for frogs' legs. They are eaten in France, but not often. And they are eaten in Spain, Portugal, Italy and other countries. The most popular way of cooking snails in France is *à la bourguignonne* (Burgundy style).

So, what are the most commonly ordered dishes in French restaurants?

The most popular dishes in French restaurants are *steak frites* (steak and chips), *poulet rôti* (roast chicken) and *fruits de mer* (seafood).



FIND OUT MORE

Find out the different ways of cooking frogs' legs. Which would you prefer if you had nothing else to eat? *Bon appétit !*



FIND OUT MORE

How are snails cooked when they are prepared *à la bourguignonne*? So, what do you think snails taste like when cooked this way? *Bon appétit !*

Les stéréotypes – vrai ou faux ?

Les Italiens mangent des pâtes tous les jours.
 Les Anglais adorent les *fish and chips*.
 Les Belges aussi aiment beaucoup les frites !
 Les Français mangent surtout des cuisses de grenouille.
 Les Espagnols préfèrent grignoter des amuse-bouche dans les bars à tapas.
 Le dessert préféré des Grecs, c'est le baklava.
 Les Portugais mangent beaucoup de poisson.



FIND OUT MORE

Et en Australie... ?
 Quel est le plat préféré
 en Australie ?

Le journal de Marie-France : ma famille à table

Moi, j'apporte une carafe d'eau à table. Mon frère Gilles apporte le pain.
 Mon père apporte les plats. Et maman crie : À table !

D'abord c'est la soupe aux légumes. Moi, je déteste ça... mais aujourd'hui mes
 grands-parents sont ici en visite, et ils aiment bien la soupe de ma mère.

Après la soupe, il y a du saucisson et de la salade niçoise. Ma mère pense que la
 salade, c'est très important pour la santé. Mais Gilles, non... « Encore de la salade,
 maman ! La salade, c'est pour les lapins ! » Mon petit frère Quentin n'aime pas le
 saucisson, alors il passe des morceaux au chien qui est sous la table. Le chien est
 très intelligent et il mange en silence.

Ma mère apporte le plateau de fromages. Quentin n'aime pas le fromage,
 et il a envie d'aller au salon pour regarder la télé. Mon père n'est pas d'accord :
 « Non, le dîner n'est pas fini, reste à ta place ! Sinon, pas de dessert pour toi ! »

Ma grand-mère apporte souvent le dessert, et ce soir, c'est une tarte aux
 pommes ! Miam-miam ! Délicieux ! Sensationnel ! Exquis ! Bravo, mamie !
 (Nous exagérons
 un peu, mais mamie
 aime les compliments.)

Mais le chien n'est
 plus là. Il n'aime pas
 la tarte aux pommes.



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

5.3



Ma famille à table Work in groups and tell your classmates what dinner is like in your family. *Qu'est-ce que vous mangez ? Qui fait la cuisine ?* Refer to the worksheet for help.

McDo !

In spite of France's reputation as the country with the world's best cuisine, there are many fast-food restaurants (*les fast-food*), for example the 'Quick' hamburger chain from Belgium, Kentucky Fried Chicken and, of course, McDonald's.

There are 1300 McDonald's restaurants in France (population 66 million). However, there are only 530 in Italy (population 60 million) and 490 in Spain (population 48 million).

So why are there so many McDonald's in France, the home of gastronomy? Could it be that they eat more fast food than they say they do? Or is there another reason?



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

If you went to France, would you eat at McDonald's?

En France... et au Québec

Although Kentucky Fried Chicken is allowed to keep its English name and initials in France (KFC), this is not the case in Québec, Canada. There it is known as *Poulet Frit Kentucky (PFK)*!

La Semaine du Goût

La Semaine du Goût ('The Week of Taste') is an annual event that takes place in France in the third week of October. It is sponsored by food producers and the ministry of education. Its aim is to educate people, mainly schoolchildren, about good food and cooking. The participants learn how to cook and how to appreciate good food.

All over France, chefs, restaurateurs, bakers, food critics and other food professionals visit schools to give talks and demonstrations on good food. Many restaurants also take part, holding special lunches and dinners at greatly reduced prices and sponsoring food workshops.

La Semaine du Goût began in 1990 and it has been such a success that similar festivals now take place in two other European francophone countries: Belgium and Switzerland.



Schoolchildren in Paris tasting food during La Semaine du Goût

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do you have events like this in your city or in your school? Do you think it's a good idea? Maybe you could suggest a 'good food day' in your school, town or suburb.

Find samples of menus from two or three well-known restaurants in your town or capital city. Bring copies of the menus to class, and try to find out what is the main culinary influence on these menus, for example 'fusion' cooking, Greek, French, Indian, Vietnamese or Korean. Compare these cooking styles and the most common ingredients and spices used. Find out which type of cuisine other class members like.

Then, imagine you are opening a French restaurant. Think up a name for your restaurant and a slogan in French. Prepare a menu for your restaurant: on one page, show the *menu prix fixe* with two or three choices for each course; on the other page(s), create an *à la carte* menu. Design an attractive front cover for your menu and a clear, attractive layout, perhaps with some illustrations for the menu pages.

VOCABULAIRE



Food and drinks

le petit déjeuner	breakfast
du café au lait	coffee with milk
du thé	tea
du chocolat chaud	hot chocolate
du jus de fruits	fruit juice
du beurre	butter
de la confiture	jam
un croissant	croissant
des céréales (fpl)	cereals
.....	
le déjeuner	lunch
l'entrée (f) /	entrée /
l'hors-d'œuvre (m)	hors d'oeuvre (first course)
.....	
une salade de pommes de terre	potato salad
un pâté de campagne	farmhouse pâté
le plat principal	main dish
un bifteck frites	steak and chips
du poulet au riz	chicken and rice
.....	
la garniture	accompagnement (vegetables)
un gratin dauphinois	dauphinoise potatoes
des haricots (mpl) verts	green beans
.....	
le dessert	dessert
une tarte aux pommes	apple tart
une glace	ice-cream

le goûter	afternoon tea
la tartine au chocolat	bread with chocolate
des biscuits (mpl)	biscuits
un fruit	a piece of fruit
.....	
le dîner	dinner
de la soupe	soup
du jambon	ham
du saucisson	cured sausage
de la salade	salad
des fruits (mpl)	fruit
un yaourt	yoghurt
.....	
des boissons (fpl)	drinks
un jus de fruit	fruit juice
de l'eau minérale	mineral water
du vin rouge / rosé / blanc	wine – red, rosé, white

Useful language at the table

Qu'est-ce que vous prenez ?	What are you having?
Je recommande...	I suggest ...
Moi, je voudrais / je prends...	I would like / I'm having ...
Si vous voulez bien.	If that's all right with you.
À l'amitié !	A toast to friendship !
Bon appétit !	Enjoy your meal!
commander un repas	to order a meal
recommander un plat	to recommend a dish
proposer un toast	to propose a toast

C'est la fête !

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask for and give the day and date
- say where you are going and what you are going to do
- talk about music
- comment on a musical performance
- comment on your own performance
- wish someone a happy celebration.

You will also learn about:

- numbers 21–60
- the days of the week and the months of the year
- significant dates in the French calendar
- festivals in France.



A display of fireworks on la Fête nationale (Bastille Day), 14 July

Eating la galette des rois (a puff pastry cake filled with almond paste) at a traditional Fête des Rois (Twelfth Night) celebration



Gitan (Romani) horsemen at the Saintes-Maries-de-la-Mer annual pilgrimage in Camargue, southern France. The horsemen are gardiens, who accompany the statue of Sara, the patron saint of the Romani people, when it is immersed in the sea.



The eternal flame and the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier under the Arc de Triomphe in Paris



A parade at le Carnaval de Nice, part of Mardi Gras celebrations



Photo: *responsibility de l'homme*



A band performing at the Fête de la Musique on 21 June

Photo: *Alamy Street Photo/Corbis Bette*



Mrs Harvey



Mme Lagarde



M. Lagarde



Mr Harvey



M. Benjelloun



Liam



Guillaume



Yassine



Nathan



Clara

La Fête de la Musique

The *Fête de la Musique* in Paris welcomes amateur musicians giving street performances. Yassine, Nathan, Clara and Sophie have formed a small group and are performing in the street in front of their school. Their families come along to watch.

1



Mrs Harvey Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?

Mme Lagarde Nous sommes le 20 juin.

M. Lagarde Et demain c'est la Fête de la Musique.

Mr Harvey Mais à quel concert allez-vous ? Il y a vraiment du choix !

2

Mme Lagarde Nous, on va à la Philharmonie de Paris. Il y a un concert superbe.

Mrs Harvey Vous avez de la chance ! Nous allons à la place de la République. David est un fan de rock.

Mr Harvey Mais d'abord, nous allons à Belleville, non ?

M. Lagarde Bien sûr ! Pour voir les jeunes sur scène !



3



Mrs Harvey Ils jouent bien, n'est-ce pas ?

M. Lagarde Je pense bien ! Ils passent des heures à répéter !

Mr Harvey La chanson, c'est de qui ?

Mme Lagarde C'est une chanson de Joyce Jonathan.

Mrs Harvey C'est une belle chanson et Clara chante bien.

4

Mrs Harvey Le rythme, c'est formidable ! C'est une chanson marocaine ?

M. Benjelloun Oui, bien sûr ! Allez, tout le monde. Tapez en rythme !

Liam Je ne comprends pas les paroles !

Guillaume C'est parce qu'il chante en arabe !



5



M. Lagarde Quelle belle chanson ! C'est de qui ?

Mme Lagarde Mon chéri, c'est une chanson de ta fille ! Et de sa copine Sophie.

Mrs Harvey La musique, c'est de Clara. Et les paroles sont de Sophie.

M. Lagarde Ah bon ! C'est une chanson franco-australienne ?

Mrs Harvey Oui. Elles ont du talent, nos filles

6



All Formidable ! Excellent ! Bravo ! Une autre ! Hé, Yassine ! Mumtaz, mon frère !

7



Mr Harvey Alors, vous êtes contents de votre concert ?

Yassine Oui, en général.

Nathan De fausses notes ici et là, c'est tout.

Clara Mais maintenant, le travail désagréable – démonter le matériel ! Allons-y.

La Coupe d'Europe

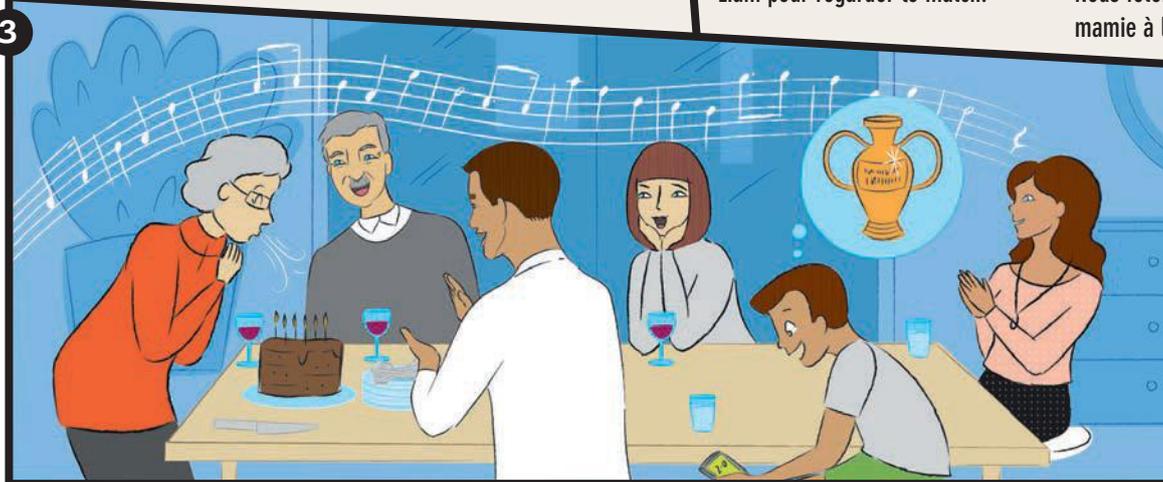
It's Friday and Guillaume is planning to watch the European Cup football final on Saturday with Liam. But it's his grandmother's birthday and he has to stay home.



Guillaume On est le combien aujourd'hui ?
Clara Aujourd'hui, c'est le 2 juillet.
Guillaume Donc demain c'est le 3 ?
Clara Bravo ! Oui, demain c'est le samedi 3 juillet. Et alors ?



Guillaume Hourra ! C'est la finale de la Coupe d'Europe ! Je vais chez Liam pour regarder le match.
Mme Lagarde Mais non, Guillaume, tu restes ici demain. Nous fêtons l'anniversaire de mamie à la maison.



All Bon anniversaire, mamie !!!
Guillaume Marseille 2, Real Madrid 0. On va gagner !!!



EN FRANCE

Traditional French calendars have the names of Christian saints assigned to almost every day of the year. In the past, a French child would often be given the name of the saint on whose day they were born. This tradition has now largely disappeared and parents choose whatever name they want for their baby. This means that a child can celebrate both their birthday and the name of the saint whose name they bear. *Bon anniversaire* celebrates the birthday and *Bonne fête* celebrates the saint's day.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues.

JUILLET						
lundi	mardi	mercredi	jeudi	vendredi	samedi	dimanche
1 Thierry	2 Martinien	3 Thomas	4 Florent	5 Antoine-Marie	6 Marietta	7 Raoul
8 Thibaud	9 Amandine	10 Ulric	11 Benoît	12 Olivier	13 Henri	14 Camille
15 Donald	16 Elvire	17 Charlotte	18 Frédéric	19 Arsène	20 Marina	21 Victor
22 Marie-Madeleine	23 Brigitte	24 Christine	25 Jacques	26 Anne	27 Nathalie	28 Samson
29 Marthe	30 Juliette	31 Ignace				

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking what is today's date

Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?

On est le combien aujourd'hui ?

2 Saying what the date is today

Nous sommes le 20 avril.

Aujourd'hui, c'est le 2 juillet.

3 Talking about tomorrow

A Demain, c'est le 3 juillet ?

B Oui, demain, c'est le samedi 3 juillet.

B Et demain, c'est la Fête de la Musique.

4 Saying where you are going and why

Nous, on va à la Philharmonie de Paris. Il y a un concert superbe.

Nous, on va à la place de la République.

C'est la finale de la Coupe d'Europe ! Je vais chez Liam pour regarder le match.

5 Talking about music

C'est une chanson franco-australienne ? C'est de qui ?

C'est une chanson de Clara et de Sophie.

Le rythme, c'est formidable ! C'est une chanson marocaine ?

6 Talking about a musical performance

Quelle belle chanson !

Clara chante bien.

Je ne comprends pas les paroles.

Il/Elle a du talent.

7 Wishing someone a happy celebration 

Bon anniversaire, mamie !

Bonne fête, Marie !

Joyeuses fêtes, les amis !

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.



LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

6.1



Quelle est la date ? On est le combien aujourd'hui ? First, write down 10 dates using figures, for example 12/5 (*lundi*). Then, with a partner, take turns to ask each other the date in French. Write down the answers you are given, again using figures. When you have finished, compare your sets of figures to check you have given and received the correct information. Try to use the different ways of asking and giving the date.

6.2



Quelle est la date de ton anniversaire ? Take turns to ask each other the date of your birthday.

6.3



Les fêtes en Australie et en Nouvelle-Zélande Work in pairs. Choose an Australian or New Zealand celebration, and ask each other to give the date of this event.



Quelle est la date de ton anniversaire ?

EN PLUS !

The word *fête* can be used to express different shades of meaning. For example, the expression *faire la fête* means to enjoy oneself in the company of others, to party. And the ironic expression *Ça va être sa fête !* means that someone is going to get into trouble.


FIND OUT MORE

What do you think this expression means?

Ce n'est pas tous les jours la fête.

MARS							
	lundi	mardi	mercredi	jeudi	vendredi	samedi	dimanche
UN JOUR	1 un	2 deux	3 trois	4 quatre	5 cinq	6 six	7 sept
	8 huit	9 neuf	10 dix	11 onze	12 douze	13 treize	14 quatorze
	15 quinze	16 seize	17 dix-sept	18 dix-huit	19 dix-neuf	20 vingt	21 vingt et un
	22 vingt-deux	23 vingt-trois	24 vingt-quatre	25 vingt-cinq	26 vingt-six	27 vingt-sept	28 vingt-huit
	29 vingt-neuf	30 trente	31 trente et un				
	UNE SEMAINE						

A Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?

A On est le combien aujourd'hui ?

B Aujourd'hui, c'est le 20 avril.

B Nous sommes / On est le 20 avril.



20	vingt	30	trente	40	quarante
21	vingt et un	31	trente et un	41	quarante et un
22	vingt-deux	32	trente-deux	42	quarante-deux...
23	vingt-trois	33	trente-trois	50	cinquante
24	vingt-quatre	34	trente-quatre	51	cinquante et un
25	vingt-cinq	35	trente-cinq	52	cinquante-deux...
26	vingt-six	36	trente-six	60	soixante
27	vingt-sept	37	trente-sept		
28	vingt-huit	38	trente-huit		
29	vingt-neuf	39	trente-neuf		



lundi

mardi

mercredi

jeudi

vendredi

samedi

dimanche



janvier

février

mars

avril

mai

juin

juillet

août

septembre

octobre

novembre

décembre

Phonétique et graphie

Comment prononcer les lettres *j* et *g*



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words.

jouer jupe je bonjour japonais Julien

This sound is not very common in English. Read the following English words out loud. In which ones can you hear the 'j' sound heard in the French words? (There are four of them.)

jazz measure sure treasure
jungle pleasure edge vision

Listen to the pronunciation of the letter 'g'.

âge manger
gentil girafe

Now listen to the letter 'g' in the following words:

guide golf
gorille garage



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

The 'g' sound in the first set is known as a soft 'g' and in the second set it is known as a hard 'g'. Can you see a pattern or a rule in the two groups of words that will allow you to predict when the 'g' will be hard and when it will be soft? Does the same rule apply in English?



Les gorilles sont gentils.

Grammaire

1 Quel / Quelle / Quels / Quelles... ?

These are four interrogative adjectives that can be used to ask 'Which?' or 'What?'

On est **quel** jour ?

Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?

Quels sont vos festivals français préférés ?

Quelles sont vos chansons préférées ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

The four forms of 'which' or 'what' indicate gender and number. Do these words sound the same?

As with adjectives, these interrogatives must have the same gender (masculine or feminine) and number (singular or plural) as the noun to which they refer.

2 Les interrogatifs

Rappel : In *Unité 4* you learnt how to form questions, such as:

Tu es étudiant(e) ?

Comment t'appelles-tu ?

Est-ce que tu es australien(ne) ?

Qu'est-ce que tu fais à Paris ?

The interrogative words in the sentences below are also used to form questions.

Où passez-vous ce festival ?

Quand allons-nous à Belleville ?

Pourquoi aimez-vous cette fête ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

How could these three questions be asked in a different way? (Hint: Think about word order.)

3 The irregular verb *aller*

Although the verb *aller* ends in *-er*, it is not a regular verb, but a frequently used irregular verb.

aller (to go)			
je vais	I go	nous allons	we go
tu vas	you go	vous allez	you go
il va	he goes	ils vont	they go
elle va	she goes	elles vont	they go
on va	we go		

The irregular verb *aller* has a range of uses. We have already seen some of them.

The main use of *aller* is to describe the action of going somewhere:

A Tu vas où ?

B Je vais au concert de rock.

It is also used for greetings:

A Bonjour madame. Vous allez bien ?

B Je vais bien, merci.

A Ça va, les jeunes ?

B Ça va, ça va.

It can be used as a form of encouragement to action:

On y **va** !

Vas-y !

Allons-y !

Allez, tout le monde. Tapez en rythme !

Asseyez-vous. **Allez**, au travail.

4 **Nous et on**

The pronoun *nous* means 'we' and has its own verb ending *-ons* (e.g. *nous avons*). However, in conversation it is often replaced with the pronoun *on*, meaning 'one'. This pronoun can mean a number of things, but when you are talking about you and your friends, it means 'we'. In this case, the verb is in the third person singular, the form used for *il* and *elle*.

Nous allons à la place de la République.



On va à la place de la République.

On va à la place de la République.



French festivals and celebrations

There are many different types of festivals and celebrations in France. As well as the *jours de fête* of religious origin, there are patriotic festivals, such as *la Fête nationale (le 14 juillet)* and *l'Armistice de 1918 (le 11 novembre)*. These are often public holidays – *jours fériés*.

There are *fêtes* related to the seasons: *les fêtes des vendanges* (grape harvest festivals), *la Fête du Muguet* (Lily-of-the-valley Festival).

Since the 1980s, cultural festivals have been added to the traditional calendar, such as *la Fête de la Musique*, *la Nuit blanche* (White Night or Sleepless Night), *la Fête des Voisins* (Neighbours' Day) and *la Fête de la Science*.

There are also *salons* (exhibitions or shows), such as the *Salon de l'agriculture à la porte de Versailles*, and the older word *foire* (fair) is still used, such as *Foire de Paris à la porte de Versailles*. And of course, today, we have *le festival de l'Internet!*

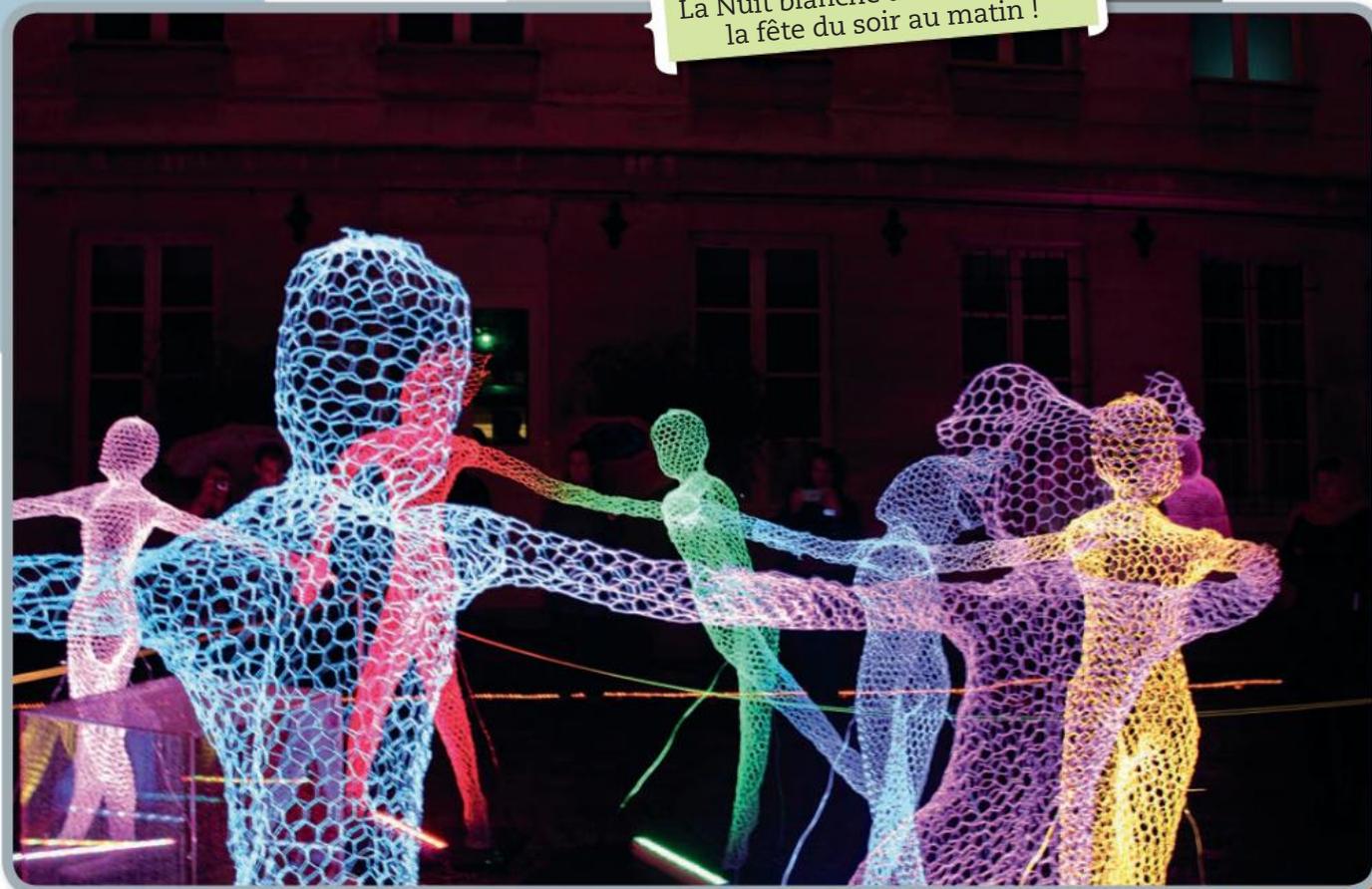
WHAT DO YOU THINK?

France has many different types of festivals throughout the year. What kinds of festivals are celebrated in your country or in your city?

FIND OUT MORE

Anzac Day is commemorated in certain towns in France. Where are these towns, and why do the French living there commemorate Anzac Day?

La Nuit blanche à Paris – on fait la fête du soir au matin !



On fait la fête en France toute l'année !

LE 6 JANVIER ▶ C'EST LA FÊTE DES ROIS.

Liam, 12 ans, Paris : En France, pour cette fête on fait un gâteau – « la galette des rois ». Dans le gâteau, il y a une petite figurine, et si c'est toi qui trouves la figurine, tu es « le roi » ou « la reine ».



Aujourd'hui, c'est moi la reine !

On allume
les chandelles ?
On fait des crêpes ?



◀ LE 2 FÉVRIER C'EST LA FÊTE DE LA CHANDELEUR.

Anne Harvey, 42 ans, Paris : On fait sauter une crêpe dans une poêle. Si la crêpe ne tombe pas, vous passez une bonne année.

AU MOIS DE MARS ▶ IL Y A LE MARDI GRAS.

Georges, 25 ans, Nice : C'est une fête où les participants portent des masques et des costumes et ils dansent dans la rue ! C'est une fête très animée !



C'est Carnaval – on se déguise !

Poisson d'avril !



◀ LE 1^{ER} AVRIL

Guillaume, 10 ans, Paris : Aujourd'hui on joue au poisson d'avril dans ma classe... On attache un poisson en papier à un copain... ou à un prof !

LE 1^{ER} MAI ▶ C'EST LA FÊTE DU TRAVAIL.

Élise, 70 ans, Nantes : On offre un bouquet de muguet à sa famille et à ses amis, c'est très joli. Mais c'est aussi le jour où les travailleurs défilent dans les rues.



Le travail,
c'est notre droit !

Vive la musique !



◀ LE 21 JUIN C'EST LA FÊTE DE LA MUSIQUE.

Nathan Lagarde, 15 ans, Paris: Il y a de la musique partout – dans les salles de concert et dans la rue. On s'amuse beaucoup !

LE 14 JUILLET ▶ C'EST LA FÊTE NATIONALE DE LA FRANCE.

Pauline, 37 ans, Vincennes : J'adore le 14 juillet ! Le feu d'artifice de la tour Eiffel est magnifique, et dans les rues, on danse.



Vive la République !
Vive la France !

**LE MOIS D'AOÛT ▶
C'EST UNE FÊTE POUR TOUT LE MONDE.
LE MOIS DE JUILLET AUSSI POUR CERTAINS.**

Stéphane, 52 ans, Aix-en-Provence :
Août, c'est le mois des vacances ; on se repose –
à la plage, à la maison ou à l'étranger.



Bonnes vacances !

Découvrons notre histoire !



**◀ LE MOIS DE SEPTEMBRE
CE SONT LES JOURNÉES DE PATRIMOINE.**

Mme Leclerc, 48 ans, Paris : Pour moi c'est
vraiment intéressant. C'est entrée gratuite
et visites guidées pour tous les musées,
pour les monuments comme la tour Eiffel
et même pour l'Assemblée Nationale.

**LE MOIS D'OCTOBRE ▶
IL Y A LES FÊTES DES VENDANGES.**

John, 34 ans, Sydney : J'ai beaucoup de
plaisir à visiter la France en automne,
surtout la vallée de la Loire. On célèbre la
récolte des raisins pour fabriquer du vin.



À votre santé !

Souvenons-nous...



**◀ LE MOIS DE NOVEMBRE
IL Y A LE JOUR DE L'ARMISTICE.**

Philippe, 82 ans, Lille : C'est une journée de
commémoration annuelle pour les sacrifices de
la Première Guerre mondiale. On observe une
minute de silence à 11 heures, le 11 novembre.

**LE 25 DÉCEMBRE ▶
C'EST LE JOUR DE NOËL.**

Bonne année !



**◀ LE 1^{er} JANVIER
C'EST LE JOUR DE L'AN.**



Joyeux Noël !

REFLECT AND CREATE

FIND OUT MORE

What types of festivals are
celebrated in your country?

Make up your own festival, such as 'Children's Day', 'Pets' Day' or 'French Food Day'. What would be the purpose of this festival? On this day, what would you do, where would you go, who would you invite, what food would you have, what music would you listen to, what would you wear?

PROJET

Choose a French national festival or a local celebration, such as an apple or wine harvest festival. Find out the origins and history of the festival, when and where it takes place in France, and how it is celebrated today. Mention the activities associated with the celebration (for example, street processions, dancing, dressing up), the type of food and drink served and so on. Make a collection of images of the events. Present your findings to the rest of the class.

VOCABULAIRE



Talking about music

aller au concert	to go to the concert
écrire les paroles (fpl)	to write the song lyrics
de la chanson	lyrics
faire de la musique	to make music
bien chanter	to sing well
répéter pour le concert	to rehearse for the show (concert)
jouer sur scène	to act on stage
taper en rythme	to beat time
démonter le matériel	to take down the set

Useful expressions

Il y a vraiment du choix.	There is really a lot of choice.
Vous avez de la chance.	You are lucky.
un fan (fanatique) de rock	crazy about rock'n'roll
Je pense bien.	I should think so.
Je ne comprends pas...	I don't understand ...
Elles ont du talent.	They are talented.
Allons-y.	Let's go.
On y va ?	Shall we go?
Vas-y !	Off you go!
Mumtaz ! (Arabic)	Excellent!

Useful nouns

la date	date
la fête	fête, celebration
le festival	festival
l'anniversaire (m)	birthday
la musique	music
le rythme	rhythm
les paroles (fpl)	words, lyrics
la chanson	song
le concert	performance
la note	note (music)

Festivals, celebrations and memorials

le premier janvier – le jour de l'An	New Year's Day
le six janvier – la Fête des Rois	Twelfth Night, Epiphany
le deux février – la Fête de la Chandeleur	Candlemas
février-mars – le Mardi gras	Mardi Gras, Shrove Tuesday
le premier avril – Poisson d'avril	April Fool's Day
le premier mai – la Fête du Travail	May Day, Labour Day
le vingt et un juin – la Fête de la Musique	Festival of Music
le quatorze juillet – la Fête nationale	National Day, Bastille Day
les mois de juillet et d'août – les grandes vacances	summer holidays
le mois de septembre – les journées de patrimoine	heritage days
le mois d'octobre – les fêtes des vendanges	grape harvest festivals
le onze novembre – le jour de l'Armistice 1918	Armistice Day (First World War)
le vingt-cinq décembre – le jour de Noël	Christmas Day

COMMUNICATION

Now I know how to ...

- talk about being hungry
Alors, les garçons, vous avez faim ?
Moi, j'ai une faim de loup. / J'ai très faim.
- express likes and dislikes
J'aime beaucoup les cuisses de grenouille !
Moi, j'adore les escargots.
Elle déteste le taboulé.
- order food and drinks in a restaurant
Moi, je voudrais une soupe à l'oignon et le poisson à la normande.
Moi, je prends le pâté de campagne.
Et pour moi, comme plat principal, le châteaubriand, s'il vous plaît.
- accept and refuse offers of food and drink
Volontiers ! Je veux bien.
Non, merci.
- thank someone for a meal
Merci pour ce dîner délicieux !
- propose a toast
Je voudrais proposer un toast !
Santé ! À votre santé ! À l'amitié !
Joyeuses fêtes, les amis !
- wish someone a happy celebration
Bon anniversaire, mamie ! Bonne fête, Marie !
- ask and say what the date is today
Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?
On est le combien aujourd'hui ?
Nous sommes le 20 avril.
Aujourd'hui, c'est le 2 juillet.
- say where I am going and why
Nous, on va à la Philharmonie de Paris.
Il y a un concert superbe.
Nous, on va à la place de la République.
C'est la finale de la Coupe d'Europe !
Je vais chez Liam pour regarder le match.

- talk about music
C'est une chanson franco-australienne ?
C'est de qui ?
C'est une chanson de Clara et de Sophie.
Le rythme, c'est formidable ! C'est une chanson marocaine ?
- talk about a musical performance.
Quelle belle chanson !
Il / Elle chante bien.
Il / Elle a du talent.

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- say 'some' or 'any' when talking about food using *de*
- form adjectival phrases of description using *à* and *de*
- use two verbs together in a sentence
- ask questions (Which? / What?) using a range of interrogative words
- ask questions using a range of structures
- use the irregular verb *aller*
- say 'we' using *nous* or *on*.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- What are the names of the meals the French eat during the day?
- Which is usually the main meal for most French people?
- How is a main meal presented – all at once or in stages?
- What are the most commonly ordered meals in French restaurants?
- What things eaten in France do you think are unusual?
- What event has been devised to encourage people to eat well?
- Can you name some different types of festivals in France?
- What is an example (the name) of each type of festival?
- What are at least three different ways of saying 'festival'?

À L'ACTION !

Watch the video of the family celebration. In groups, create a script and act out, in French, the scene of a celebration of your choosing. Take turns performing for the class or make a video of your scenario.

OR
Draw a cartoon of a family celebration. Include photos of the dishes featured. You may like to make a multimedia presentation of your cartoon with voice-over. You can work alone or in a small group.



SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand what to ask or how to respond in certain situations.

- You are in a restaurant and you are going to order some dishes. How would you express this? (There are three possible ways.)
- You want to express your dislike of certain foods and drinks. What might you say?
- A friend asks you what the date is today. What would you say?
- Your friend asks you what you are doing tomorrow. What might you say?
- You are listening to a song you really like. How would you say this?
- You are watching an excellent musical performance. What would you say?
- You are with good friends and you wish to propose a toast. What would you say?
- It's your friend's birthday. What wish would you express?
- It's your friend's name day. What wish would you express?
- Your friends are going off on holidays. What would you say to them?



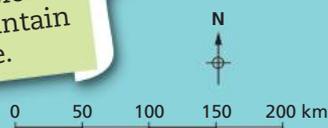
France is divided into 13 regions, each with its own budget and governed by a regional council. The regions differ greatly in climate, landscape, produce, food, culture and sometimes even language. Some regions are combinations of smaller regions that have been made into one larger territory in order to reduce bureaucracy. For example, Grand-Est is made up of Alsace, Champagne-Ardenne and Lorraine.



Alamy Stock Photo/Ton Koene/VWPics



A view of the ski resort of Chamonix in the French Alps. In the background is Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in western Europe.

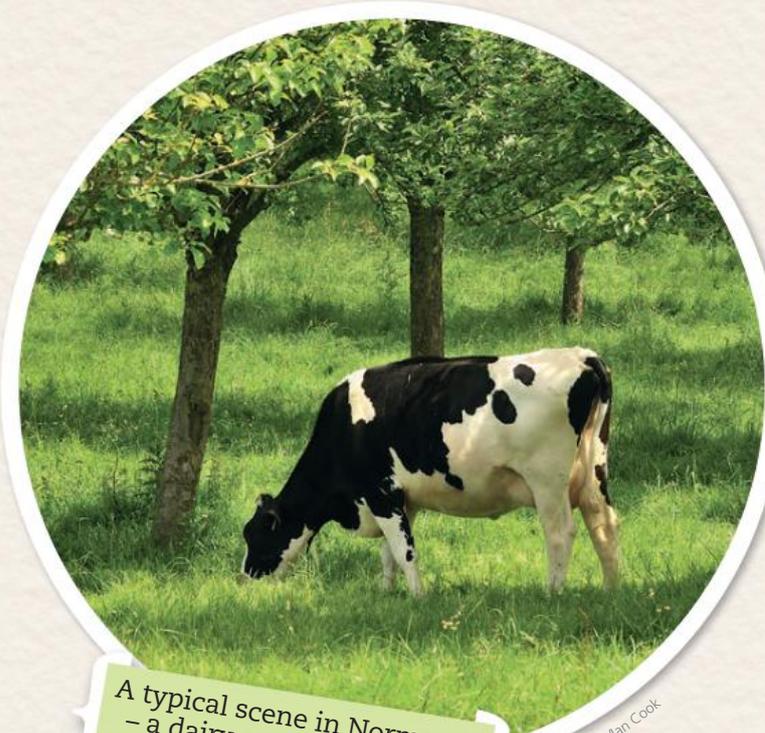


WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Look at the map. Which regions have a lot of mountains?
What do you think the climate is like there?

The advantage of mountainous borders

You can see that there are mountains near the borders with neighbouring countries (Luxembourg, Germany, Italy and Spain). In the past, this made it difficult to invade France along these borders. In Roman times, the famous military leader Hannibal astounded his enemies by crossing the Alps from Gaul (modern-day France) to invade Rome. At that time, nobody thought it was possible for an army to cross the Alps. (Most of the 38 elephants in Hannibal's army did not survive the crossing.)



A typical scene in Normandy – a dairy cow grazing in an orchard near Bayeux

Imagefolk/Ken Cook

Look at the regions of Côte d'Azur and Languedoc-Roussillon near the Mediterranean Sea. They have a 'Mediterranean climate' like Melbourne, Adelaide and Perth. So, what is the winter like in these regions? And the summer?

This coast, particularly the part known as the Riviera, is world famous as a tourist destination. But in summer it is crowded and expensive.

A view of *la promenade des Anglais* in Nice, on the Côte d'Azur, also known as the French Riviera. English tourists used to walk along here to take in the warm sea air.



Imagefolk/Ken Welsh

Shutterstock.com/Production peig



A windmill in a wheat-growing area of France. Windmills were used mainly to make flour. Today they have either been converted into houses or preserved as historical monuments.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- 1 Which northern regions are on the coast? They are not far from the United Kingdom, so what do you think the climate would be like here?
- 2 Look at Brittany (*Bretagne*), surrounded by sea. What would be a major industry here?
- 3 Normandy is famous for its dairy cattle. So what dairy food would be produced there, apart from milk? What fruit would grow well in Normandy and Brittany? (These provinces are well known for their cider.)
- 4 Look at the regions on the Atlantic coast. Why do these areas have the best surfing beaches in France?
- 5 In the Limousin region, there is a city called Limoges. Find out what it is famous for.
- 6 The island of Corsica (*la Corse*) is a part of France. But which country is it closest to? (You may have to look at an atlas.)

The Limousin is also known for a breed of beef cattle, called the Limousin. It is a popular breed of beef cattle in Australia, as is the Charolais breed from Burgundy.

France is the biggest wheat producer in Europe. It produces more wheat than Australia. Although wheat is grown in most areas of France, there is one area that is famous for its extensive wheat fields. In some places you might think you are in Australia, were it not for the church spires. Which area would that be?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

A world-famous film festival is held in this region every year. Where is it held?

FIND OUT MORE

Nice is one of the main cities on the Côte d'Azur. The popular *salade niçoise* is a local salad. What are the ingredients of this salad? Would most of the ingredients be found easily in the local area?

Australian links to French regions

The Normandy city of Cherbourg, known for shipbuilding, has been very important to Australia since 2015. Why? One of the biggest vessels built there is *Le Redoutable* ('The Terrifier'). Is Australia likely to buy one of these? Why or why not?

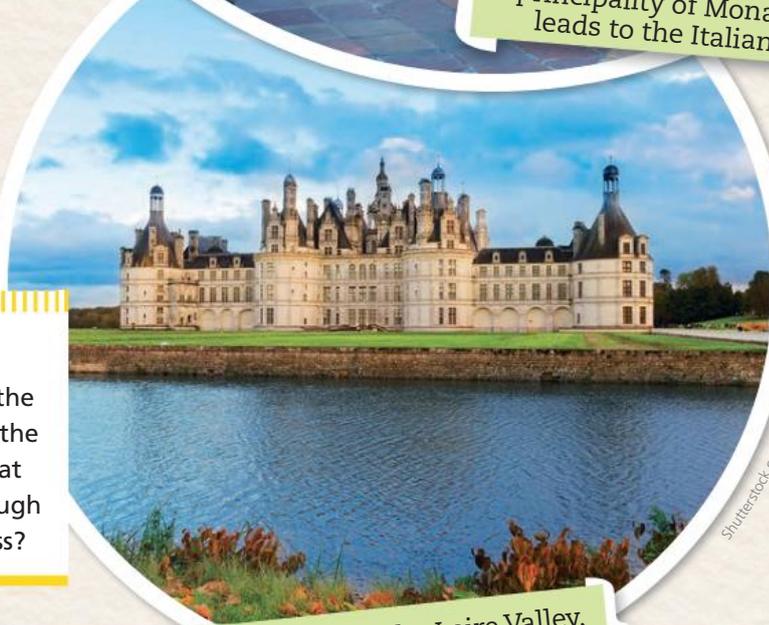
The region of Picardy is regularly visited by Australian tourists, particularly the town of Villers-Bretonneux. Why?

FIND OUT MORE

France has four main river systems, the Seine, the Rhône, the Garonne and the Loire. Where do they start? Into what bodies of water do they flow? Through which regions and cities do they pass?

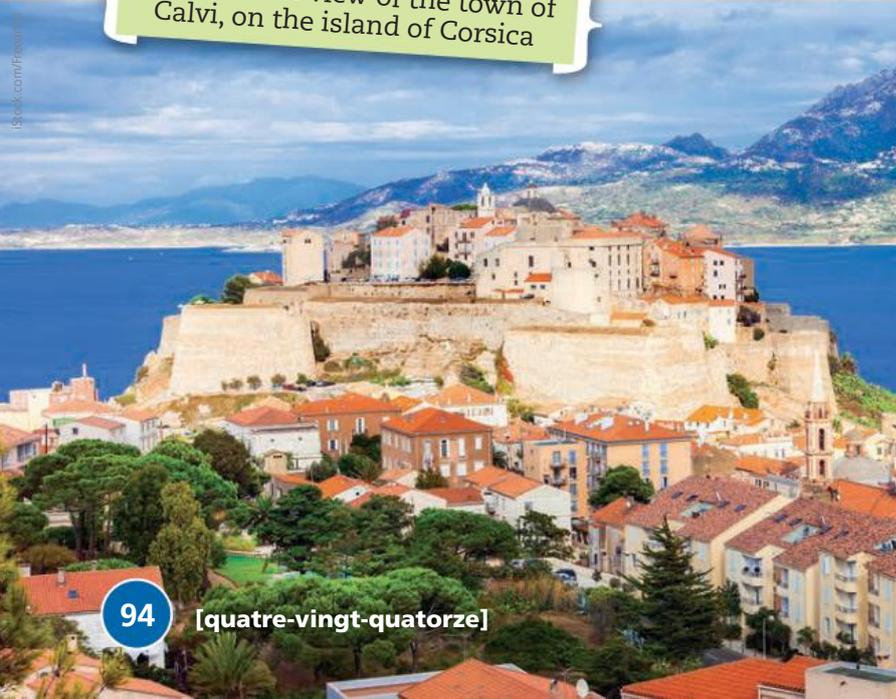


Outdoor restaurants in le vieux Nice (old Nice). Next to Nice is the principality of Monaco, which leads to the Italian Riviera.



Le château de Chambord, in the Loire Valley, famous for its many historical castles

A panoramic view of the town of Calvi, on the island of Corsica



Overseas regions of France

Some regions of France are not actually in France. As we have seen, Réunion is in the Indian Ocean, close to Africa. Martinique and Guadeloupe are islands in the West Indies. French Guiana is a large territory on the north coast of South America. New Caledonia and French Polynesia are in the Pacific Ocean.

FIND OUT MORE

- What famous French historical figure was born in Corsica?
- Why is French Guiana important for the European Space Agency?

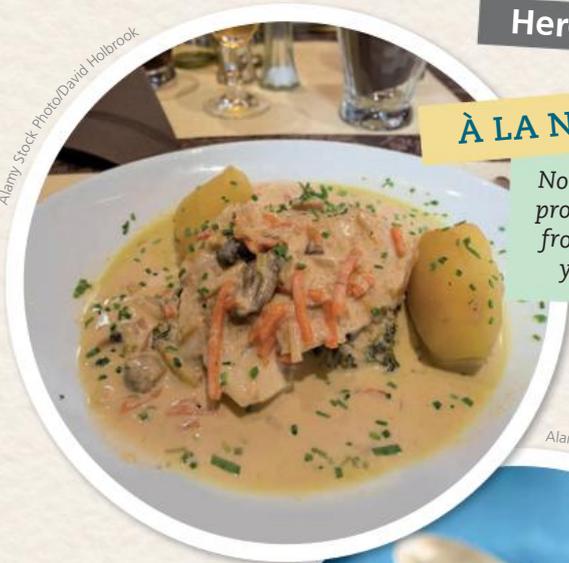
Food and language

You may have seen names for French food such as *bœuf bourguignon* or *quiche lorraine*. In both examples, the second word describes the town or region where the dish comes from, like the Italian dishes *pizza napolitana* (from Naples) or *spaghetti bolognese* (from Bologna).

Here are some examples of regional French dishes:

À LA NORMANDE

Normandy is famous for fish and dairy products. A sauce normande is made from fish stock, cream, butter and egg yolk, and is often served with fish.



Alamy Stock Photo/David Holbrook

PROVENÇAL

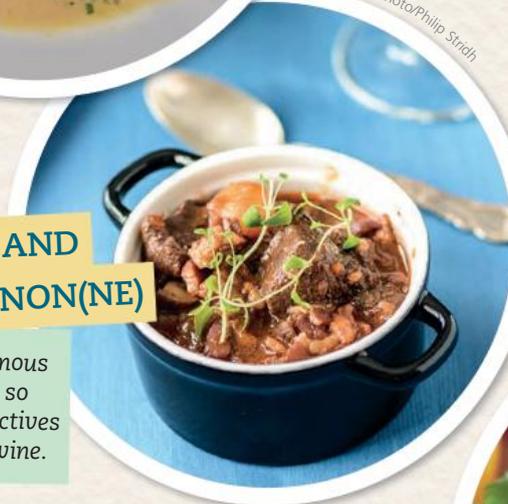
This refers to the warm south of France, so dishes from this region will contain tomatoes, capsicums, olives, onions, garlic and herbs such as thyme and sage.



iStock.com/MariaPavlova

BORDELAIS(E) AND BOURGUIGNON(NE)

These regions are famous for their red wines, so dishes with these adjectives are cooked with red wine.



Alamy Stock Photo/Philip Strick

NIÇOISE

This means that the dish comes from the city of Nice, on the Italian border.



Getty Images/
Danita Delimont

Shutterstock.com/Igor Dutina

BRETON(NE)

This refers to the maritime region of Brittany, a major agricultural area that produces pork, dairy products, vegetables, fish and shellfish. The best-known dish from Brittany is crêpe bretonne.



FIND OUT MORE

- Search online for these dishes and note their ingredients: *bouillabaisse*, *cassoulet*, *ratatouille* and *raclette*. Which regions are they associated with?
- *Choucroute* is served in restaurants in many regions, particularly in the north-east of France. It is an Alsatian dish. What is the main ingredient? What is its name in German?

ENQUÊTE

Choose one French province for an in-depth study. Include the geography and climate of the province, a short history, the main cities including the capital, the main agricultural and industrial activities, regional cuisine and any other information you find interesting.

En classe, on travaille

In this unit you will learn how to:

- talk about school timetables and calendars
- ask and say what subjects you have and when
- talk about your marks in various subjects
- ask and answer questions in class
- give and follow classroom instructions
- ask for and give the time.

You will also learn about:

- the French secondary school system
- French school timetables and calendars
- clothing and menus in French schools.



les sciences de la vie et de la terre /
les SVT



l'informatique et Internet

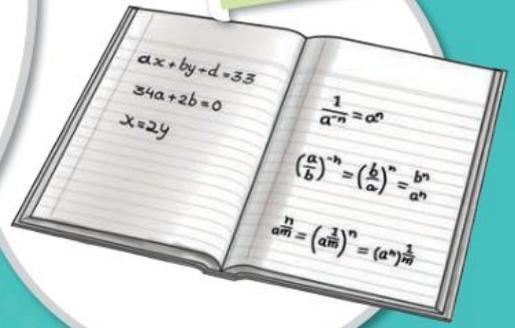
Collège Jean Rostand

A crowd of students and teachers outside the Collège Jean Rostand in Orléans, on the first day of school (*la rentrée*) on 1 September 2016. They were waiting for the president and prime minister of France, who visited the school that day.

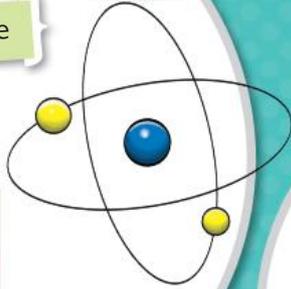
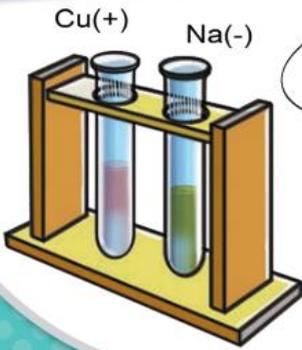


l'histoire-géographie-éducation civique

les mathématiques / les maths



la physique - la chimie



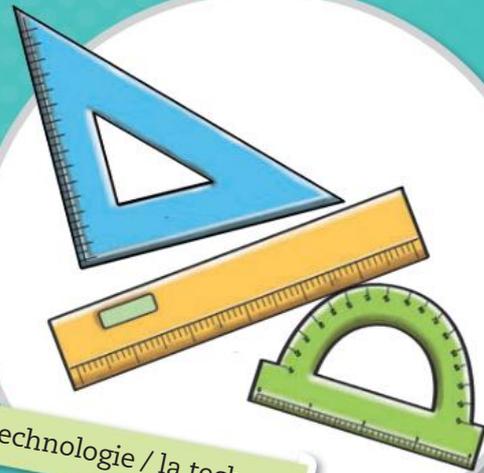
les langues vivantes



l'éducation physique et sportive / EPS



l'histoire de l'art



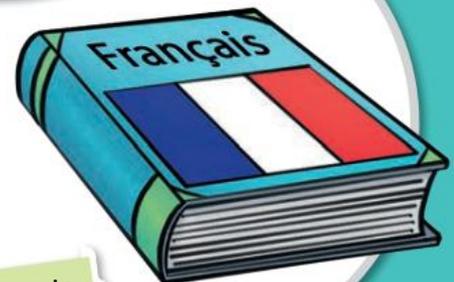
la technologie / la techno



l'éducation musicale et les arts plastiques



le français





Yassine



Sophie

Qu'est-ce qu'on a aujourd'hui ?

Sophie and Yassine discuss how they are doing in various subjects, particularly in the tests. Sophie reminds Yassine, who has lost his timetable, that there is a history test today at 10 o'clock.

1

Yassine Salut Sophie.
Sophie Salut Yassine.
Yassine Tu te reposes là ?
Sophie Non, je ne me repose pas ! Je révise – je me prépare pour le contrôle d'histoire !
Yassine Le contrôle d'histoire ???
Sophie Oui ! Aujourd'hui !

2

Yassine Oh là là ! C'est à quelle heure, le contrôle ?
Sophie À neuf heures.
Yassine À neuf heures !? Et puis après, qu'est-ce qu'on a ? Je ne trouve pas mon emploi du temps.
Sophie Écoute bien... À dix heures on a anglais, et à onze heures on a français.

3

Yassine Eh bien... merci... Je ne suis pas fort en histoire. Ça va, pour toi, les contrôles ?
Sophie J'ai de bonnes notes en SVT. Et en maths aussi, 14 sur 20.

4

Yassine C'est bien ça ! Moi aussi, je suis fort en maths. Et le français, ça va ?
Sophie Pas trop mal. J'ai des notes moyennes – 11, 12...

5

Yassine Mais pas de problème en anglais ?
Sophie Non. Après tout, c'est ma langue maternelle. Et toi ?
Yassine Moi, je suis nul en anglais. La grammaire anglaise pour moi c'est un grand mystère !
Sophie Et l'éducation civique pour moi c'est la même chose !

6

Yassine Bon, je vais au CDI. À tout à l'heure.
Sophie À tout à l'heure Yassine.



EN FRANCE

The CDI (*centre de documentation et d'information*) is a combined library and multimedia centre, a place where students go to work on assigned projects. Today, nearly every secondary school has such a centre.

The CDI is usually divided into various areas, each one with a specific purpose

- a place where students can work in groups
- a place where they can work individually
- a place where they can read
- a place to store educational resources.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do you have a centre like this in your school? If not, do you think it would be useful to have this kind of workroom?

Un problème de maths

Nathan arrives late for a maths test. He is very tired because he was watching a soccer match early that morning.



Professeur



Nathan



Yassine

1

Professeur Ah, te voilà Nathan.
Nathan Pardon monsieur.
Professeur Donne-moi ton billet de retard, s'il te plaît. Merci. Assieds-toi.

2

3

Yassine Qu'est-ce que tu as ? Tu es fatigué ?
Nathan Non, je...
Professeur Silence ! Taisez-vous !

Professeur Bon, écoutez bien. Aujourd'hui, il y a un contrôle écrit. Éteignez vos portables. Sortez vos cahiers. Mais ne sortez pas vos livres. Le problème est là, au tableau. Vous avez une demi-heure pour trouver la solution. Commencez !

4

Professeur Ça y est, c'est terminé. Posez vos stylos. Donnez-moi vos copies, s'il vous plaît.

5

Professeur Alors, Nathan, tu as la solution ?
Nathan !? Réveille-toi !
 La solution, Nathan ?
Nathan Quoi ? La solution ? Euh... quoi ?
Professeur Le résultat, Nathan ! Le résultat !
Nathan Ah ! France 4, Australie 0 !!!

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues.

L'EMPLOI DU TEMPS

	LUNDI	MARDI	MERCREDI	JEUDI	VENDREDI
8h – 9h	anglais	SVT	SVT	maths	EPS
9h – 9h50	maths	arts plastiques	français	éducation civique	EPS
RÉCRÉATION					
10h10 – 11h	EPS	histoire-géo	technologie	anglais	anglais
11h – 12h	EPS	CDI/Permanence	technologie	SVT	CDI/Permanence
DÉJEUNER					
13h30 – 14h30	français	anglais		français	français
14h30 – 15h25	CDI/Permanence	maths		histoire-géo	maths
RÉCRÉATION					
15h35 – 16h30	histoire-géo	français			SVT

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

In pairs, ask and answer questions about the timetable. For example:

– *Le cours de français est à quelle heure mercredi ?*

– *C'est à neuf heures.*

1 Asking what subjects you have



Qu'est-ce que nous avons comme matières aujourd'hui ?

On a histoire aujourd'hui, non ?

Et puis après, qu'est-ce qu'on a (comme matière) ?

À huit heures, on a EPS.



Shutterstock.com/Monkey Business Images

2 Saying when the lesson begins



À dix heures on a anglais.

Et à onze heures on a français.

3 Asking about your performance in various subjects



Ça va, pour toi, les contrôles ?

Tu n'as pas de problème en anglais ?

Tu as de bonnes notes en maths ?

4 Talking about your performance in various subjects



Je suis fort(e) en maths !

J'ai des notes moyennes en français.

BULLETIN DE NOTES

Maths 16/20

BULLETIN DE NOTES

Français 11/20

Je ne suis pas fort(e) en histoire.

Moi je suis nul en anglais.

BULLETIN DE NOTES

Histoire 9/20

BULLETIN DE NOTES

Anglais 5/20

5 Giving and following classroom instructions



Éteignez vos portables.

Sortez vos cahiers.

Posez vos stylos !

Taisez-vous !

Donnez-moi vos copies, s'il vous plaît.

Réveillez-vous !

Préparez-vous.

Levez-vous.

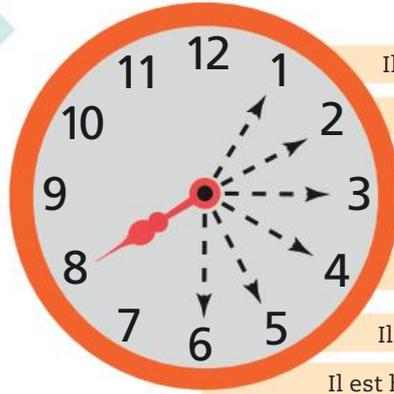
6 Asking someone what is the matter



Qu'est-ce que tu as ? Tu es fatigué(e) ?

7 Asking and giving the time

Quelle heure est-il ?



Il est huit heures cinq.

Il est huit heures dix.

Il est huit heures quinze. / Il est huit heures et quart.

Il est huit heures vingt.

Il est huit heures vingt-cinq.

Il est huit heures trente. / Il est huit heures et demie.

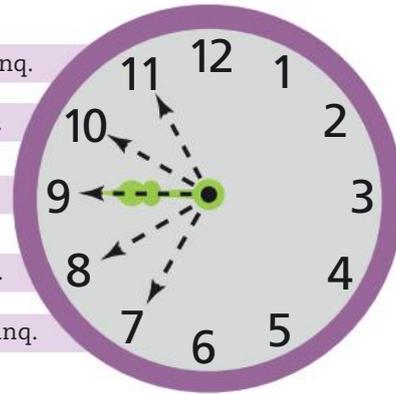
Il est huit heures cinquante-cinq. / Il est neuf heures moins cinq.

Il est huit heures cinquante. / Il est neuf heures moins dix.

Il est huit heures quarante-cinq. / Il est neuf heures moins le quart.

Il est huit heures quarante. / Il est neuf heures moins vingt.

Il est huit heures trente-cinq. / Il est neuf heures moins vingt-cinq.



Il est sept heures du matin.

Il est trois heures de l'après-midi.

Il est neuf heures du soir.

Let's master the key structures.
Work in pairs or groups to practise
these structures after listening
to the audio recordings.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

1.1



Il est quelle heure ? Working in pairs, ask each other the time and respond according to the clock faces on the worksheet.

1.2



Écoutez bien ! Take turns at being the teacher, asking questions and giving instructions to the other members of the class.



Je suis fort(e) en classe

EN PLUS !

- Which of these expressions applies to the student and which applies to the teacher?

faire la classe

être en classe

- Where would these classes take place?

classe verte

classe de neige

classe de mer

- What happens when a student does this?

sauter une classe

- What kind of classes are these?

classe turbulente

classe studieuse

- What does this expression mean?

faire l'école buissonnière

Phonétique et graphie

Les voyelles nasales

Listen to the audio for the pronunciation of these words, paying attention to the letters in red.

mon	ton	bon	on	ont	poisson	mignon	allons
en	enfant	blanc	manger	français	étudiant		
lapin	copain	cinq	vingt	matin	demain		



Hi-han ! Hi-han !

These sounds are known as nasal vowels. This is because when you pronounce them, the air passes through your nose. It sounds a bit like when you have a cold. The first nasal vowel is written *on*, the second is *an* or *en* and the third *in* or *ain*. The 'n' is not pronounced, except in the case of a liaison, for example:

Bon_ <u>a</u> ppétit !	on_ <u>a</u>	on_ <u>a</u> ime	en_ <u>A</u> ustralie
------------------------	--------------	------------------	-----------------------

Pin-pon ! Pin-pon !



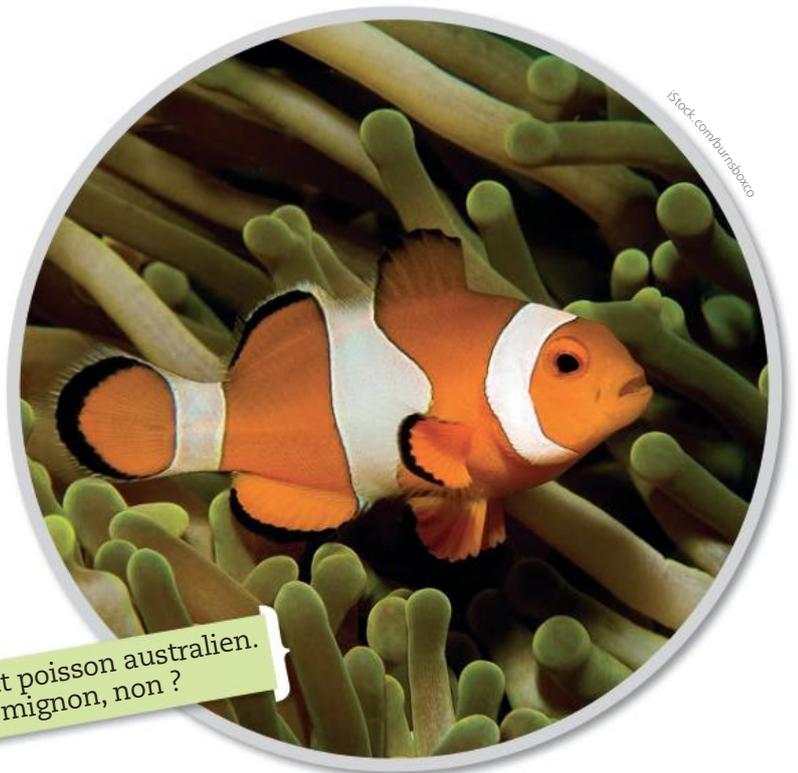
WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Listen as your teacher reads out these pairs of words. In which words do you pronounce the 'n' and in which ones do you **not** pronounce it because it is the sound of a nasal vowel?

bon	bonne
Martine	matin
australien	australienne
tonne	ton
mignonne	mignon
poisson	donne

FIND OUT MORE

The English and French sounds *m* and *n* are known as 'nasal consonants'. Why is this?



Voici un petit poisson australien. Il est mignon, non ?

Grammaire

1 La forme impérative des verbes réguliers en -er

If you are giving an order to someone with whom you use the *tu* form, use the *tu* form of the present tense verb but without using the *tu*. Note that for *-er* verbs, the imperative verb form has no *s*.

If you are giving an order to someone with whom you use the *vous* form, use the *vous* form of the present tense verb but without using the *vous*. This is also the plural imperative form (i.e. when you are speaking to more than one person), for example *Écoutez !* (to a class).

present	imperative s	present	imperative p
tu écoutes	Écoute !	vous écoutez	Écoutez !
tu parles	Parle !	vous parlez	Parlez !
tu restes (assis)	Reste (assis) !	vous restez (assis)	Restez (assis) !

Note the negative imperative form of these verbs: 

s	p
N' écoute pas !	N' écoutez pas !
Ne parle pas !	Ne parlez pas !
Ne reste pas assis !	Ne restez pas assis !

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

For the French imperative, you remove the subject pronouns *tu* and *vous*. What happens in English?

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

In French the negative *ne... pas* is placed around the verb. What is the negative form for the imperative in English and where does it go?

2 Les verbes pronominaux

Verbs that have a reflexive pronoun (*me, te, se, nous, vous, se*) between the subject and the verb are called reflexive verbs.

se reposer (to rest, to relax)	
je me repose	nous nous reposons
tu te reposes	vous vous reposez
il / elle / on se repose	ils / elles se reposent

s'habiller (to get dressed)	
je m' habille	nous nous habillons
tu t' habilles	vous vous habillez
il / elle / on s' habille	ils / elles s' habillent

Look at the verb *s'habiller* above. The translation is 'to get dressed', so *je m'habille* is 'I get dressed'. However, in French there is a reflexive pronoun. How would you translate *je m'habille, tu t'habilles* etc. if you translated word for word? Try the same thing with *s'appeler*.

If the reflexive pronoun appears before a silent *h* or a vowel, the forms *me, te* and *se* are shortened to *m', t', s'*:

- je **m'**habille
- tu **t'**appelles
- il **s'**amuse

s'appeler (to be called)	
je m' appelle	nous nous appelons
tu t' appelles	vous vous appelez
il / elle / on s' appelle	ils / elles s' appellent

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

There are hardly any reflexive verbs in English, but reflexive pronouns are frequently used. Find out what the English reflexive pronouns are.

3 La forme impérative des verbes pronominaux en -er

The imperative form is usually expressed in the second person. Note: There is no 's' in the second person singular form of -er verbs, and the pronoun *tu* becomes *toi* in the imperative form.

present	imperative
tu te réveilles	Réveille-toi !
vous vous réveillez	Réveillez-vous !
tu t'habilles	Habille-toi !
vous vous habillez	Habillez-vous !

Moi, ma conscience et le contrôle



FIND OUT MORE

- The cricket giving orders in the cartoon above is based on a 19th-century Italian story where *il grillo parlante* (the talking cricket) stops a young boy (actually a wooden puppet) from telling lies. This story became a famous Walt Disney film. What is the story called?
- Each of the orders given by the cricket is the imperative form of a reflexive verb. What are the infinitive forms of these verbs (the forms you find in a dictionary)?

Le système scolaire en France

Education in France is compulsory from the age of six (the first year of primary school), but the majority of parents send their children to school earlier, to an *école maternelle* (preschool), generally from the age of three to five.

From age six to 10, children complete 5 years of primary school (*école élémentaire*). Then they move on to the secondary system:

COLLÈGE (Junior high school)		
Age	Grade	Abbreviation
11–12	sixième	6 ^e
12–13	cinquième	5 ^e
13–14	quatrième	4 ^e
14–15	troisième	3 ^e
First public examination: le brevet des collèges		

LYCÉE (Senior high school)		
Age	Grade	Abbreviation
15–16	seconde	2 ^{de}
16–17	première	1 ^{re}
17–18	terminale	Term / Tle
Final secondary examination: le baccalauréat		

The school week is 24 hours long, but timetables vary:

- Some schools choose a 4-day week with 6 hours of classes per day on Monday, Tuesday, Thursday and Friday.
- In other schools, there may be classes on Wednesday morning, with Wednesday afternoons free. Some schools have classes on Saturday morning.
- Some schools prefer a 5-day week, Monday to Friday, because this pattern is seen as being less tiring for students.

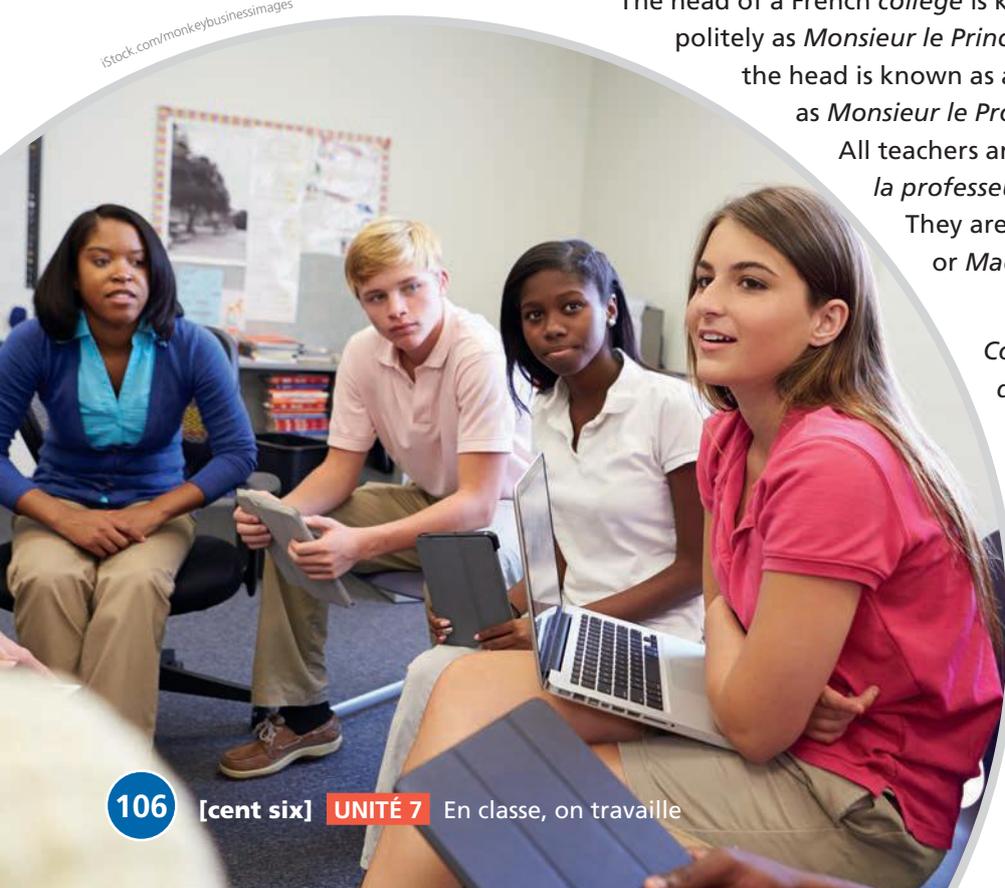
The school day can be quite long: classes begin at 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m. and finish at 4 p.m. or later. In winter, students have to travel to school in the dark – the sun rises during the first period. Senior students may have to travel home in the dark, too.

There is a lunch break of 1.5 to 2 hours and students generally have this in *la cantine* (the school canteen) where a full three-course meal is provided. It is very cheap because it is subsidised by the local *commune* (municipality). However, some parents prefer their children to come home for lunch.

The head of a French *collège* is known as a *principal(e)* and is addressed politely as *Monsieur le Principal* or *Madame la Principale*. In a *lycée*, the head is known as a *proviseur(e)* and addressed politely as *Monsieur le Proviseur* or *Madame la Proviseure*.

All teachers are called *professeurs* (*le professeur / la professeure*) or, more casually, *le prof* or *la prof*. They are addressed politely as simply *Monsieur* or *Madame*.

French schools also have a number of *Conseillers d'éducation* and *Assistants d'éducation*. These staff members supervise students on arrival at school, and at lunch and break time. They also keep attendance rolls, settle disputes and supervise students during detention and during their free periods in the *salle de permanence*, where they can do their homework or read. This takes a lot of pressure off teachers.



Le système de notation scolaire

In France, students' academic performance is evaluated through a 20-point marking scale as set out below.

Mark	Grade
16–20	Très bien
14–15	Bien
12–13	Assez bien
10–11	Passable
0–10	Insuffisant (<i>Fail</i>)

The marking system is quite strict and few students score more than 16.

Le code vestimentaire

Most French school students are not required to wear a uniform. However, there is a dress code; for example, clothing should be neat and casual.

The wearing of what are called *signes religieux ostentatoires* (conspicuous religious symbols) is also forbidden because French public high schools strongly defend the principle of secularism – French state schools are totally separate from religion, Christian or other schools.

There are a number of people, including parents and some politicians, who think that uniforms should be reintroduced.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- How does the French school timetable compare with your timetable? Would you like to be at school from 8 a.m. to 4 p.m. with a long lunch break and a three-course meal for lunch?
- Would you prefer a French grading system (i.e. marks out of 20 with little chance of getting more than 16) to the one you have in your school? What are the advantages and disadvantages of the French system?
- What are the good points (and not so good points) of each country's education system? For example, would you prefer not to wear a uniform?

Libérez-nous du code vestimentaire !

Olivia, élève dans un collège en Australie, a une correspondante en France, Manon. Olivia pense que les élèves français ont de la chance parce qu'ils ne portent pas d'uniforme. Manon n'est pas d'accord...

WhatsApp chat interface showing a conversation between Olivia and Manon.

Olivia Online

Alors, c'est vrai, dans ton collège, on ne porte pas d'uniforme ? Mais tu as de la chance !

Tu trouves ? Ce n'est pas toujours facile !

Comment ça ?

Parce qu'il y a un code vestimentaire, et si nos vêtements ne sont pas conformes au code, les profs n'hésitent pas à nous faire des remarques.

Ah bon... par exemple ?

Par exemple... « Vous vous croyez en vacances ? », « La tenue de plage n'est pas acceptable au collège ! », « Vous êtes à l'école, pas en boîte ! ».

C'est vrai, ce n'est pas agréable. Alors, pas de short, pas de jupe trop courte ?

Et... pas de tee-shirt qui montre le ventre, pas de bermuda, pas de dessins sur notre pantalon, pas de cheveux aux couleurs voyantes, pas de piercing... la liste est longue !

C'est pour maintenir une bonne image du collège, non ?

Sans doute. Mais enfin... mon choix de vêtements ne change pas ma façon de travailler en classe ! Tout cela n'est pas normal – je suis dégoûtée et mes amis aussi. Vive la liberté d'expression !

COLLÈGE DANTEC

Bonne fête !

Pierre Fourier

Menu, lundi 03/10/2018

Toute l'équipe de la cuisine mutualisée des collèges et la diététicienne vous proposent ce menu et vous souhaitent un excellent appétit !

Carottes râpées à l'orange

Taboulé



Tartiflette *

Merguez



Haricots verts

Frites



Fromage blanc

Yaourt nature



Fruit de saison production locale

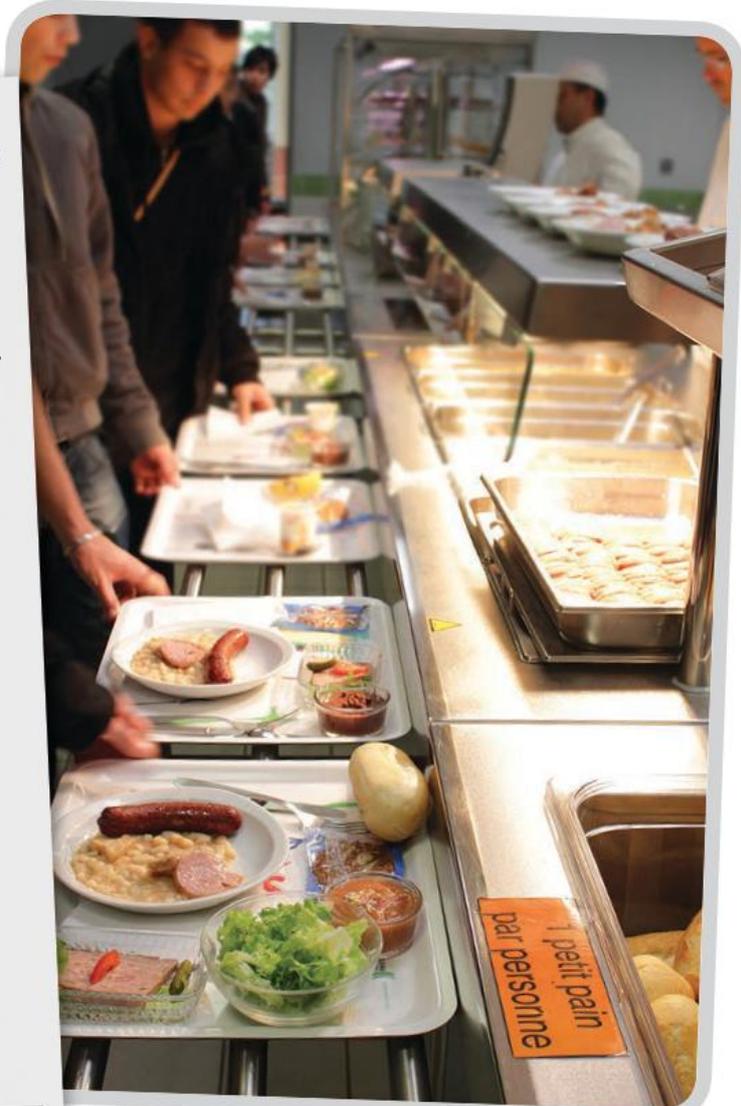
Ananas

* Ce plat contient du porc.

Visa du responsable de la cuisine mutualisée des collèges
Ph. Lesoux

Visa de la diététicienne
G. Genet

Visa du chef de l'établissement
J.-P. Anaud



Photonstop/Jacques Loic

Merguez is a spicy mutton- or beef-based sausage originally from North Africa.

Tartiflette is a French dish from the mountainous Haute Savoie region of France. It is made with potatoes, cheese, cubes of smoked pork (lardons) and onions.



Pierre Qu'est-ce que tu vas prendre ? Moi, je prends du taboulé, de la tartiflette, et du fromage blanc. Toi aussi ?

Karim Non, non, je ne mange pas de porc, tu sais ? Alors pour moi, les merguez. Et des carottes râpées, et un yaourt.



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why in some French schools is there an alternative to dishes containing pork? Do you know of any other food restrictions that might occur in school canteens? Why do these exist?

Find an example of a French school menu. There are quite a few on the Internet, or maybe you have friends in France who can help you.

Present this menu to your classmates, indicating if possible the name and region of the school, the type of meal prepared for the students, and the nutritional value of the food shown on the menu. How do these school menus compare with the type of restaurant menus in the *Unité 5 Projet*? You could also prepare some of the dishes at home and bring photos to share with the rest of the class.

VOCABULAIRE



School subjects

les matières (fpl) scolaires	school subjects
l'histoire-géographie- éducation civique (f)	Social Sciences
le français	French
l'anglais (m)	English
les mathématiques (fpl) / les maths	Maths
l'éducation (f) physique et sportive / EPS	Physical Education
les sciences (fpl) de la vie et de la terre / les SVT	Natural Sciences
la physique	Physics
la chimie	Chemistry
les arts (mpl) plastiques	Art
l'éducation (f) civique	Civics
la musique	Music
la technologie / techno	Design and Technology

School administration

la récréation / la récré	break time
l'emploi (m) du temps	timetable
le contrôle	test
la note	mark
le billet de retard	late note
la copie	test paper
la solution	answer, solution
le résultat	result
un livre	textbook
les conseillers (mpl) / assistants (mpl) d'éducation	administrative/ supervisory staff

Useful expressions

Quelle heure est-il ?	What is the time?
Qu'est-ce qu'on a aujourd'hui ?	What do we have today?
À tout à l'heure.	See you soon.
Qu'est-ce que tu as ?	What's wrong with you?
être fort(e) en...	to be good at ...
être nul(le) en...	to be hopeless at ...
être moyen(ne) en...	to be average at ...

Classroom commands

Écoute bien ! / Écoutez bien !	Listen closely!
Assieds-toi ! / Asseyez-vous !	Sit down!
Tais-toi ! / Taisez-vous !	Be quiet!
Prépare-toi ! / Préparez-vous !	Get ready!
Éteignez vos portables !	Switch off your mobile phones!
Sortez vos cahiers !	Take out your exercise books!
Posez vos stylos !	Put your pens down!

Specialised rooms

le CDI (centre de documentation et d'information)	resource centre
la salle de permanence	study room where students go when they have free periods

Mes journées sont bien remplies !

In this unit you will learn how to:

- arrange a meeting
- talk about daily routines
- say when and how often you do these activities
- talk about activities for young people
- say what activities you like or don't like to do.

You will also learn about:

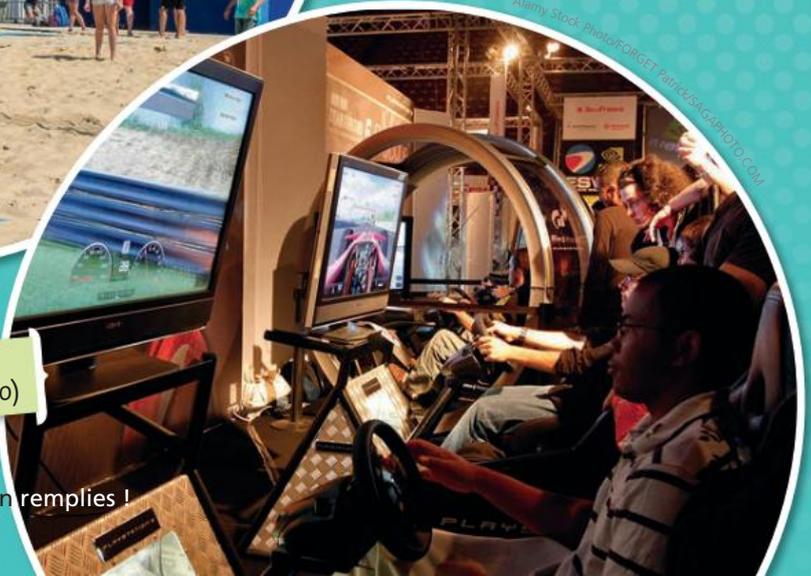
- the daily routines of young French people
- popular leisure activities in France.



Beach volleyball courts in front of the *hôtel de ville* (city hall) in Paris. From around mid-July to the end of August, the streets along the River Seine are covered in sand and become *Paris Plages* (Paris Beaches).



A video arcade
(une salle de jeux vidéo)



Students outside the Lycée Ampère in Lyons. The school is named after French physicist André-Marie Ampère. The unit of measurement of electric current, the ampere, is named after him.

Alamy Stock Photo/David Espinal



Walking the dog down the Rue Galande in the Latin Quarter of Paris

Alamy Stock Photo/Chuck Peltz

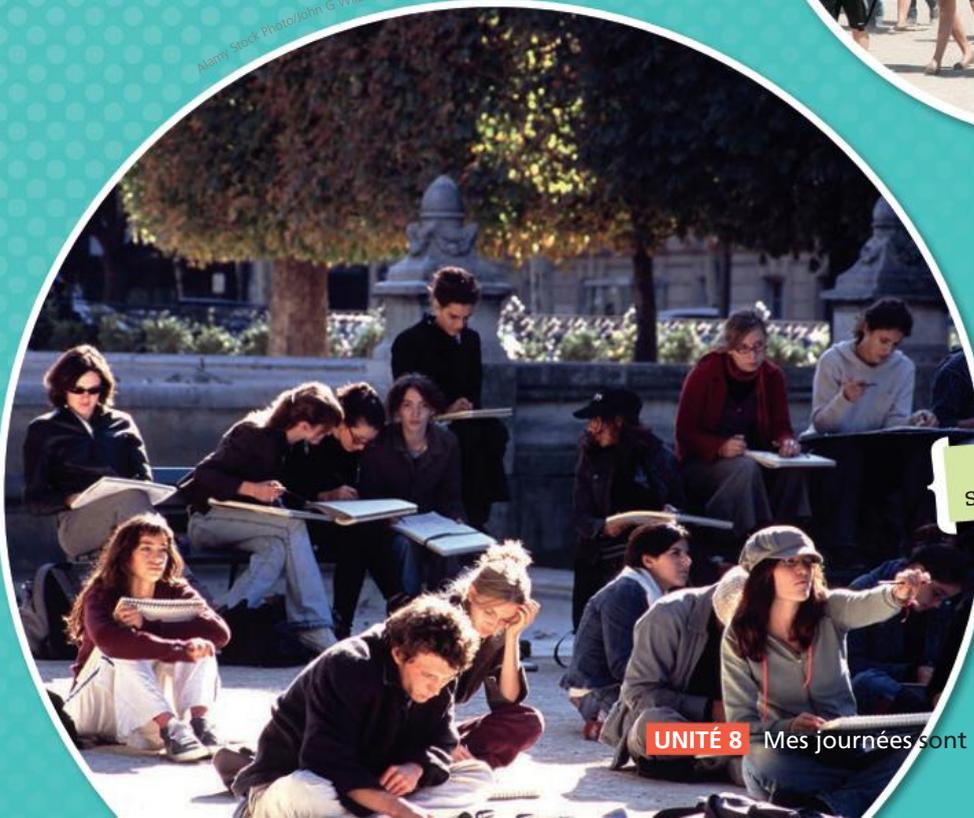


Students on a school visit to the Louvre

Alamy Stock Photo/Carlo Boile



Alamy Stock Photo/John G. Wilbanks



An outdoor art class, with students sketching the scenery



Nathan



Sophie



Yassine



Clara

C'est dur d'être étudiant !

Clara, Sophie, Nathan and Yassine have to prepare a project together and are trying to arrange a meeting. They find they have various commitments during the week. They finally decide to meet on Sunday for a 'working lunch'. Yassine thinks it's hard to have to work on Sunday.

1

Nathan Et ce projet de classe que nous faisons ensemble ?
Sophie Quel jour êtes-vous libres pour travailler sur le projet ?
Yassine Mercredi après-midi ?
Clara Oui. Le mercredi après-midi on n'a pas cours.

2

Nathan Mercredi je ne suis pas libre. J'ai rendez-vous chez le médecin.
Yassine Ah bon ? Comment ça ?
Nathan J'ai mal à la jambe depuis le match de foot samedi dernier.
Clara Samedi matin alors ?
Yassine Non, le samedi matin j'ai ma leçon de guitare, comme toujours.
Sophie Et moi, je fais les courses avec maman, comme d'habitude.

3

Clara Oh là là ! C'est compliqué. Et samedi après-midi ?
Nathan Tu rigoles ! Le samedi, Yassine et moi, nous avons un match de foot.
Yassine Et ce samedi, c'est un match super important !
Sophie Mais tu as mal à la jambe, Nathan. Tu ne vas pas jouer, tout de même ?
Nathan Non, mais je vais regarder le match – pour encourager les copains !

4

Yassine Et dimanche ? Nous sommes tous libres le dimanche, non ?
Clara Pas toujours. Mais ce dimanche, pour moi ça va.
Sophie Pour moi aussi.
Nathan D'accord. Mais à quelle heure ? Et où ?

5

Clara Au café République ? Vers onze heures ?
Yassine Oui, c'est une bonne idée. On déjeune ensemble ?
Sophie D'accord.
Nathan Alors, c'est décidé. Rendez-vous dimanche, à onze heures. Pour un déjeuner-travail.
Yassine Travailler le dimanche ! C'est dur d'être étudiant !

À quelle heure tu te lèves, Guillaume ?



Mme Lagarde Guillaume

Guillaume describes a typical school day, from the time he gets up to the time he goes to bed.



Mme Lagarde
Guillaume !!!!
Lève-toi !!
Habille-toi !
Tu vas être
en retard !

Il est sept heures et quart.
Ma journée commence.
Normalement je me lève tout
de suite, mais quelquefois...



Un petit déjeuner rapide et je quitte
la maison. Tchao, maman ! Je me
dépêche pour prendre le métro.



J'arrive toujours à huit
heures moins le quart !
Je ne suis jamais en retard.



Le matin, dans ma classe, on
commence toujours avec une
dictée. Pour moi, c'est dur. Je
ne suis pas fort en français.



À midi, je déjeune à
la cantine... encore
des carottes !



Guillaume Allô, maman ? Je suis chez Liam.
Nous faisons nos devoirs ensemble, d'accord ?

Seize heures. Enfin libre ! Je vais chez
Liam et on joue aux Skylanders.
Liam et moi, on adore les jeux vidéo.



Il est dix-huit heures. On se promène,
n'est-ce pas, Brutus ? Et après on va dîner.
J'ai une faim de loup ! Grrrr ! Et toi, Brutus ?



Ouf ! Je me couche.
J'ai sommeil. Quelle
longue journée !



EN FRANCE

Dictation (*la dictée*) has always been an essential everyday exercise in French primary education, although there are indications that this is changing. It is basically a school exercise that aims at testing the mastery of writing and grammar. Since many features of French grammar are in the writing, but not evident in the spoken language, this can be a challenging task for students.

It has also been a national pastime and a part of history. In the court of Emperor Napoléon III, it was a popular entertainment. In 1857, the royal family and others did a famous dictation prepared by the writer Prosper Mérimée. The emperor made 75 errors; his wife, Empress Eugénie, made 62. The winner was the Austrian ambassador, Metternich, who made only three errors!

The French national dictation competition (*les « Dicos d'or »*) for both adults and students was one of the most popular shows on French television from 1985 to 2005. Can you imagine?!

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Did you do dictation when you were in primary school? If so, did you think it was a useful exercise? Now that you have done some dictation in French, what do you think about it? Is it helpful? Why or why not?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Arranging a meeting

A Quel jour êtes-vous libre ?

B Je ne suis pas libre samedi.

A Dimanche matin alors ?

2 Talking about daily routines

A À quelle heure tu te lèves ?

B Normalement je me lève à seize heures moins le quart.

À midi, je déjeune à la cantine.

Seize heures ! Je vais chez Liam et on s'amuse.

Il est dix-neuf heures trente. On va dîner.

J'ai sommeil... je me couche.

3 Saying when and how often you do these activities

Le samedi matin, j'ai ma leçon de guitare.

Le dimanche, nous avons toujours un match de foot.

Je fais souvent de la gymnastique.

Quelquefois je promène le chien.

Je fais rarement les courses avec maman.

Je ne joue jamais aux jeux vidéo.



toujours



souvent



quelquefois



rarement



ne... jamais

4 Talking about leisure activities



Je joue aux jeux vidéo dans ma chambre.

Je fais de la pétanque au parc avec la famille.

Je regarde des films téléchargés sur mon ordinateur.

Je surfe sur Internet et je communique avec des correspondants.

Parfois je vais au cinéma avec mes copains.

J'écoute de la musique électronique.



5 Saying what leisure activities you like or don't like doing



A Tu aimes les BD ?

A Moi, j'adore lire les romans et les histoires d'amour.

B Oui, mais je n'aime pas lire des livres.

Mes copains aiment écrire leur « blog », mais pas moi.

Liam et moi, on adore les jeux vidéo.

Yassine n'aime pas travailler le dimanche.

EN PLUS !

The reflexive verb *s'amuser* is used when talking about having fun or enjoying yourself. For example:

Je m'amuse beaucoup avec mes amis à discuter ensemble au café.

To wish someone a good time, you can say:

Amusez-vous bien !

What do you think the following suggests?

Ils s'amusent comme des fous !

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

8.1 **Ma journée** Work with a partner. Ask each other about your daily routines.

8.2 **Quels sont tes loisirs préférés ? Tu aimes le sport ?** Prepare a list of sports or leisure activities. Interview three or four members of your class and ask them what sports or leisure activities they do and how often. Then answer the questions they ask you.

8.3 **Qu'est-ce qu'on fait cet après-midi ?** Work in groups of three or four. You all have a free afternoon and have to decide what you are going to do. All members of the group have different suggestions.

à la classe **Qu'est-ce que je fais ?**

Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer *-ien* et *-ienne*



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words. Pay special attention to the letters in red.

Viens !

bien

chien

musicien

The final sound is the nasal vowel, which we looked at in *Unité 7*. Now listen to these two pairs of words and compare the first word to the second:

vingt

Viens !

ben

bien

The final nasal vowel is the same in all four words, but the *-ien* spelling is pronounced with a 'y' sound before it. Listen to these comparisons between *-ien* and the feminine form, *-ienne*:

un chien

Il est australien.

Il est italien.

une chienne

Elle est australienne.

Elle est italienne.



Did you notice that in the feminine form the nasal vowel disappears and the ending is pronounced 'yenne'? In other words, the 'n' is pronounced in the feminine form.

Practise saying these masculine and feminine words, making the *-ien* / *-ienne* distinction.

2 La prononciation de c



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words.

cela

copain

certain

commencer

camembert

cinq

cigarette

cousin

culture

bicyclette

Can you work out a rule that explains why 'c' is sometimes pronounced like 'k' (hard 'c') and when it is pronounced like 's' (soft 'c')?

Why is there a cedilla (ç) in ça?

cela

How would you pronounce ça if it were spelt 'ca'?

ça

And *garçon*, *façon*, *leçon*? How would we pronounce them if there were no cedilla?



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Read these words: cat, city, commence, century, bicycle, cut, recipe, culture, cot, certain.

Can you find a rule that explains why in English we pronounce 'c' sometimes as 's' and sometimes as 'k'? How does this rule compare to the French one?

Grammaire

1 Le verbe irrégulier *faire*

Here is the present tense table of the irregular verb *faire*.

faire (to do, to make)	
je fais	nous faisons
tu fais	vous faites
il / elle / on fait	ils / elles font

Je fais mes devoirs.

Nous faisons un projet ensemble.

On fait les courses chaque samedi.

Note: Use the following constructions if you are talking about sport:

Ils font du karaté après l'école.

On fait de la natation tous les jours.

Tu fais de l'athlétisme ?

2 Faire et jouer pour parler d'activités

When we use *jouer*, the forms *au*, *à la*, *à l'* and *aux* are used for sports and games:

Je joue **au** tennis.

Ils jouent **à la** pétanque.

However, the forms *du*, *de la*, *de l'* and *des* are used for music:

Elle joue **du** piano.

Je joue **de la** guitare.

When we use *faire*, the forms *du*, *de la*, *de l'* and *des* are used for all activities:

Ils font **de la** natation.

Je fais **de la** guitare.

Il fait **du** violon.

Elles font **de l'**aérobic.

Elle fait **du** basket.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

How do these expressions translate into English?

Je fais du tennis.

Je joue au tennis.

Je joue de la guitare.

Je fais de la natation.

Je fais de l'aérobic.

Je fais du karaté.

3 Mardi / le mardi

Mardi je fais du tennis.

This statement refers to one Tuesday only: the next Tuesday.

Le mardi je fais du tennis.

This statement means you do tennis every Tuesday. It is a regular event.

4 Les adverbes

Adverbs modify the meaning of verbs. There are various types of adverbs:

- *adverbes de manière* (manner)

Il travaille **bien** mais elle travaille **mal**.

- *adverbes de lieu* (place)

Nous habitons **ici**, et nos amis habitent **là** !

- *adverbes de quantité* (degree)

Ma sœur travaille **beaucoup** en classe, et mon frère travaille **assez bien**.

- *adverbes de temps* (time)

Moi, je fais les courses **maintenant**, d'accord ?
Je fais mes devoirs **plus tard**.

- *adverbes de fréquence* (frequency)

Elle arrive **souvent** en retard pour sa leçon de musique.

Adverbs of frequency indicate how often the action occurs:

Je promène **toujours**
souvent
quelquefois
rarement le chien.

Adverbs of frequency are generally placed after the verb as in the examples above. However, they may occur either towards the end or at the beginning of the sentence:

Quelquefois je promène le chien.

Frequency may also be expressed using an adverbial phrase:

Je fais les courses **tous les jours**.

Je fais les courses **de temps en temps**.

Les loisirs

LES LOISIRS PRÉFÉRÉS DES JEUNES FRANÇAIS – une « culture de la chambre »

Comme beaucoup de jeunes dans d'autres pays, les jeunes français adoptent rapidement les nouvelles technologies. Ils adorent jouer aux jeux vidéo, sur leur ordinateur, sur leur console ou sur leur téléphone portable. Ils écoutent de la musique, et regardent des films. Ils n'ont pas besoin de sortir pour s'amuser !

Mais les jeunes français aiment aussi la lecture : des romans, des magazines et surtout des bandes dessinées. La « BD » est considérée en France et en Belgique comme une forme d'expression artistique – « le neuvième art ».

L'ordinateur, l'iPad, la tablette et le téléphone portable occupent une place de plus en plus importante dans les loisirs. Les jeunes français utilisent ces appareils pour surfer sur Internet, pour écrire des blogs, créer des vidéos, montrer leurs photos ou télécharger des films et de la musique. La technologie favorise une véritable « culture de la chambre ».



Alamy Stock Photo/Leszek Kobusinski

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Work in a group or in pairs and ask each other questions about the things you have in your room, what you do and how often.

Tu as un iPad / une tablette / ... ?

Tu télécharges de la musique ou des films ? Souvent ?

Tu aimes les BD ? Quelles BD tu préfères ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do you think that this *culture de la chambre* exists in your country? Do you think it's a good thing or a bad thing?

FIND OUT MORE

Find out the names of some famous Belgian cartoon characters. Hint: Among them you will find some small creatures originally known as *Les Schtroumpfs* – you probably know them by another name.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Is there a 10th art form? What would it be, for you?

Les arts en France

1^{er} art : l'architecture

2^e art : la sculpture

3^e art : les « arts visuels » – la peinture et le dessin

4^e art : la musique

5^e art : la littérature, et aussi la poésie et le théâtre

6^e art : les « arts de la scène » – le théâtre, la danse, le mime et le cirque

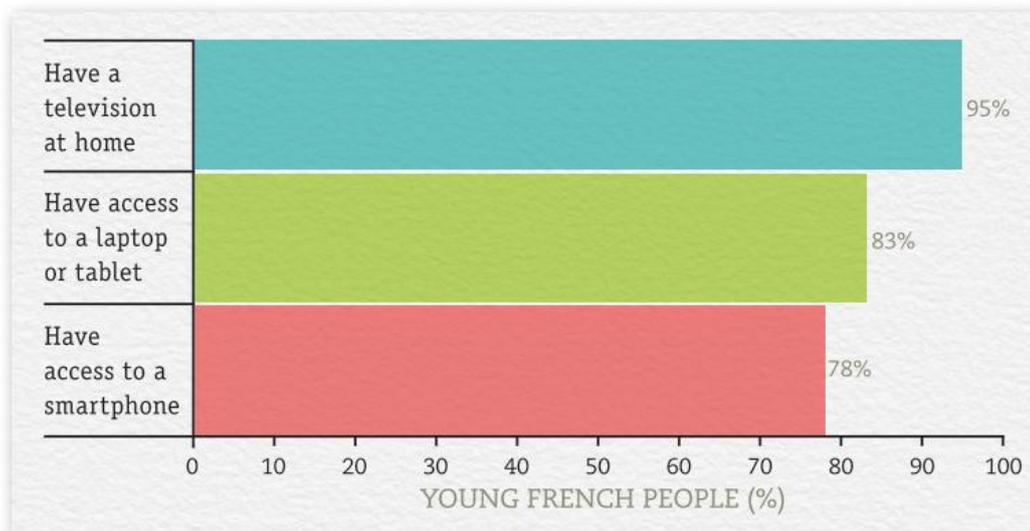
7^e art : le cinéma

8^e art : les « arts médiatiques » – la radio, la télévision et la photographie

9^e art : la bande dessinée (BD)

Young French people are tech-savvy and connected!

Most young French people have a number of media devices – smartphones, tablets, PCs, televisions and game consoles. Television is the most widespread: 95 per cent of all French families have at least one in their home. A total of 78 per cent of teens have access to a smartphone and 83 per cent have access to a laptop or tablet. French teenagers spend on average 13.5 hours per week online, mostly during the weekend – 4 hours online on a Saturday or Sunday is not uncommon. (Data sourced from a study by French market research firm Ipsos in June–November 2014)



FIND OUT MORE

For the three categories listed in the graph, find out what the statistics are for young people in Australia or New Zealand. Do you think you are as tech-savvy and connected as young French people, or more so?

La leçon de tennis

Lui Mais non ! Le service, ce n'est pas comme ça. Donne-moi la balle.

Lui Alors, tu lances la balle comme ça. Et avec la raquette, tu fais comme ça...

Lui Voilà ! Maintenant à toi.

Elle D'accord. Comme ça ?

Lui Non, pas comme ça ! Encore une fois !

Une demi heure plus tard...

Elle Comme ça ?

Lui Non, non, non, non !!! Oh là là, ma pauvre ! On arrête ?

Elle Non, non... Je comprends maintenant.

Elle Voilà, je fais... comme ça !



The French national women's football (soccer) team

What do French teenagers do when they go out?

Although they spend a lot of time entertaining themselves at home, young French people go out a lot. And when they go out, it's with friends. For nine out of ten of them, having fun with friends is an essential part of their lives.

So where do they go? The cinema is the most popular destination. They also like concerts – rock, R'n'B, rap, metal, African and 'fusion' music – their musical tastes are wide. Those aged over 18 of course like to go clubbing. Going to a museum or to the theatre are less popular activities.

Ninety per cent of young French people play sport, either in a club or with friends. Boys tend to like football (soccer), cycling, tennis, rugby, basketball, handball and martial arts such as karate. Girls tend to prefer swimming, gymnastics, tennis and dance. However, they also like soccer, martial arts ... and rugby!

Many young French girls and boys play music. Their favourite instruments are the guitar and the piano or keyboard, although quite a few play classical instruments such as the violin, the cello or the flute. African percussion is also in fashion, and you can often hear the sound of the djembe in the streets and parks.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Do you think that the leisure activities of young French people are similar to yours and those of your friends? What, if any, are the main differences?



A djembe



Buskers near a metro entrance in Saint-Germain-des-Prés in Paris

France has a great depth of talent in modern music, from rock to hip-hop, rap, and music with African and Arabic influences. Many French and francophone musicians are well known internationally. However, they are not always recognised as French, because some of them sing in English or have adopted English names. For example, the internationally famous DJ Bob Sinclair is French, born Christophe Le Friant.

The songs of (Pierre) David Guetta, born in Paris and nominated on many occasions as Best International DJ, are almost all in English.

Some French bands have English names too: the members of Daft Punk are both French, Thomas Bangalter and Guy-Manuel de Homem-Christo. The electronic dance duo Justice are also both French: Xavier de Rosnay and Gaspard Augé. The members of Phoenix, Thomas Mars, Deck d'Arcy, Laurent Brancowitz and Christian Mazzala, started their career as a garage band in the suburbs of Paris.

French musicians have been a dominant force in the development of electronic music since Jean-Michel Jarre's groundbreaking album *Oxygène* in 1976.

FIND OUT MORE

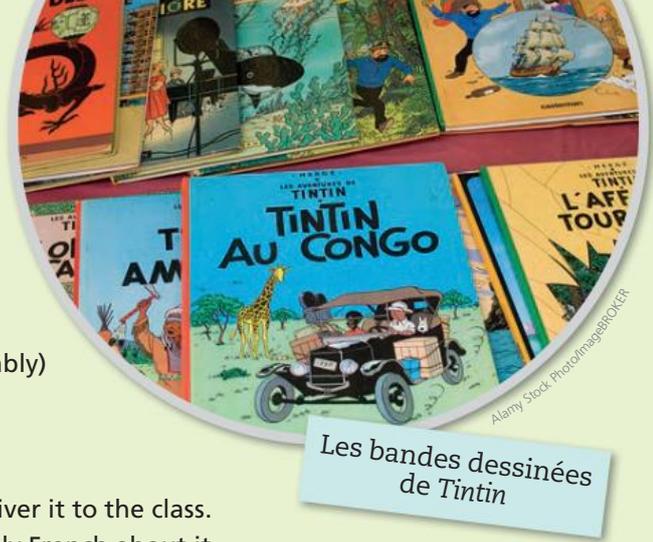
Depending on which type of music you prefer, find French musicians, bands and singers and listen to their music. This can be done in English; for example, search the web for 'current French hip-hop musicians/performers/bands', 'current French rap performers', 'current French electronic musicians/bands', 'current French pop singers', or French *rai* fusion music. Decide which ones are your favourites. How do they compare with other musicians you like?

PROJET

Find an example of a French artistic creation. It could be:

- a French film or television show
- an art exhibition of a French artist that you are familiar with
- a novel by a French author that you have read (in English probably)
- a French singer or composer
- a French magazine or BD (*bande dessinée*) you have read.

Prepare a creative or a visual presentation on the work and deliver it to the class.
Say why you like the work you have studied and what is distinctively French about it.



VOCABULAIRE



Talking about daily routine

la routine quotidienne	daily routine
se lever	to get up
quitter la maison	to leave the house
se dépêcher	to hurry
arriver	to arrive
travailler	to work
rentrer	to come back home
s'amuser	to enjoy oneself
se promener	to go for a walk
se coucher	to go to bed

Leisure activities

une 'culture de la chambre'	'room culture' (adolescents spending a lot of leisure time in their rooms with technology)
jouer aux jeux vidéo	to play video games
lire les BD	to read comics
écrire un blog	to write a blog
la lecture	reading
faire des photos, des vidéos	to take photos, make videos

Adverbs of frequency

normalement	normally, usually
quelquefois	sometimes
souvent	often
toujours	always
ne... jamais	never

Useful expressions

C'est dur d'être...	It's tough being ...
Je suis libre.	I'm free.
Comment ça ?	How's that?
comme d'habitude	as usual
comme toujours	as always
Tu rigoles !	You're joking!
être en retard	to be late
tout de suite	immediately, at once
avoir mal (à la jambe)	to have a sore leg
avoir sommeil	to be sleepy
chez moi, chez toi...	at my place, at your place ...
fixer un rendez-vous	to arrange a meeting
Ça marche pour moi.	That's fine for me.
prendre le métro	to take the metro (train)
C'est l'heure de...	It's time for/to ...
rentrer chez moi	to go home

COMMUNICATION

Now I know how to ...

- talk about subjects at school
À dix heures on a histoire.
Et à onze heures on a français.
Et puis après, qu'est-ce qu'on a comme classe ?
- talk about performance in various subjects
Ça va, pour toi, les contrôles ?
Tu n'as pas de problèmes en anglais ?
Moi, je suis nul(le) en anglais.
Je ne suis pas fort(e) en histoire.
Mais j'ai de bonnes notes en maths !
J'ai des notes moyennes en français.
- give and follow classroom instructions
Éteignez vos portables. Sortez vos cahiers.
Posez vos stylos.
Silence ! Ne parlez pas !
Donnez-moi vos copies, s'il vous plaît.
- ask someone what's wrong
Qu'est-ce que tu as ? Tu es fatigué(e) ?
- ask and give the time
Quelle heure est-il ?
Il est onze heures. / Il est midi. / Il est quatre heures de l'après-midi. / Il est seize heures.
Il est une heure moins le quart. /
Il est midi quarante-cinq. / Il est trois heures et demie. / Il est quinze heures trente.
- talk about daily routines
Normalement, je me lève à sept heures.
Je déjeune à la cantine à midi.
À cinq heures de l'après-midi / À dix-sept heures...
je m'amuse avec mes amis.
Il est sept heures / Il est dix-neuf heures...
et on va dîner.
Il est tard, j'ai sommeil, je me couche.
- say when or how often these activities take place
Le samedi matin, j'ai ma leçon de guitare.
Le vendredi, je fais les courses.
Le samedi, nous avons toujours un match de foot.
Je fais souvent de la gymnastique.
Quelquefois je promène le chien.

- talk about leisure activities
Je joue aux jeux vidéo dans ma chambre.
Je regarde des films téléchargés sur mon ordinateur.
J'écoute de la musique électronique.
Je surfe sur Internet et je communique avec des correspondants.
Je fais de la pétanque au parc avec la famille.
Parfois je vais au cinéma avec mes copains.
- say what leisure activities I like or don't like to do.
Je n'aime pas lire des livres.
Moi, j'adore lire des romans et des histoires d'amour.
Je n'aime pas jouer du piano, mais j'aime faire de la guitare.
Mes copains aiment écrire leur « blog », mais pas moi.

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- use the imperative form of verbs ending in -er
- use reflexive verbs in the present tense
- use the imperative form of reflexive verbs
- use the irregular verb *faire*
- use *faire* and *jouer* correctly when speaking of activities
- use adverbs of manner, place, degree, time and frequency.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- What is the compulsory age for French children to start school?
- Do all students in France go to school every day of the week? Explain.
- When do classes generally start and finish in a secondary school?
- What is different about clothing in a French high school compared with your school?
- What rule applies to wearing religious symbols in French schools?
- How do schools cater for the midday meal for students?
- What are some of the leisure activities enjoyed by young people in France?
- What does *une culture de la chambre* mean?
- What is *le neuvième art* in France?
- What kind of music do young people listen to? What are some favourite instruments?
- What are the most popular sports played in France?

SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand what to ask or how to respond in certain situations.

- The teacher says: *Éteignez vos portables*. What do you do?
- The teacher says: *Posez vos stylos et donnez-moi vos copies*. What do you do?
- How would you ask what time the history class begins?
- How would you say that maths is on at 11 a.m.?
- How would you say that you are very good or hopeless in a school subject?
- A friend looks ill or tired. How would you ask 'What's the matter?'
- You tell a friend 'see you soon'. What would you say?
- How would you say that your day begins at 7 a.m.?
- How would you say that you are free at last!
- How would you say that it's been a long day, you are tired and you are going to sleep?

À L'ACTION !



Watch the video of four friends arranging a date for a game of badminton, saying when they are free and not free, and why. Then create a scenario where a group of friends are arranging a date and time for an activity. Take turns performing for the class or make a DVD of your scenario.

OR

Draw a cartoon of a group of friends arranging a date and time for an activity. Show them doing the activity in the last frame(s). You may like to make a multimedia presentation of your cartoon with voice-over. You can work alone or in a small group.



Comment sont-ils ?

In this unit you will learn how to:

- describe someone's appearance
- talk about someone's personality
- express opinions about others.

You will also learn about:

- French national identity
- regional cultures and languages in France.



At the Stade Vélodrome in Marseille, the French football team les Bleus celebrate their victory over Germany in the UEFA European Championship semi-final in July 2016. In the grand final France lost to Portugal 1-0.



A world championship semi-final match of the traditional Basque game jai alai (in French, *pelote basque*), in Saint-Jean de Luz, southern France. The Basque country extends from the south of France across the border into northern Spain.

Portrait of Louis XIV, also known as le Roi-Soleil (the Sun King), who ruled France from 1638 until his death in 1715. His reign of 72 years and 110 days is the longest of any monarch of a major country in European history.



Alamy Stock Photo/Chinatown

Customers lining up outside the Pho Banh Cuon Vietnamese restaurant in the main *quartier chinois* (Chinatown area) of Paris. Vietnamese, Cambodian and Laotian restaurants can be found in many parts of France; all three countries were French colonies (French Indochina).

Getty Images/Manuel Blondeau



French boys outside an apartment building in Marseille, the most culturally diverse city in France

Getty Images/Manuel Blondeau



A Breton festival in Quimper, Brittany, with dancers in traditional costume



Clara



Sophie



Yassine



Nathan

Bill Bresson chante faux ? Ah non !

Clara sees a poster of the singer-songwriter Bill Bresson and is keen to see his next concert with Sophie. Nathan dislikes him intensely and says some nasty things about him, which Clara doesn't appreciate.

1

Clara Tiens ! Regardez l'affiche ! Tu le connais, Sophie ?

Sophie Non, je ne le connais pas. Qui est-ce ?

Clara C'est Bill Bresson ! C'est un super chanteur, et en plus, il est auteur-compositeur.

Sophie Il est beau, avec ses cheveux noirs frisés et ses yeux marron.

Clara Et il passe à l'Olympia en juin ! Formidable !

2

3

4

Yassine Il te plaît ?

Nathan Tu plaisantes ! Il est moche ! Il chante faux. Ses chansons sont nulles. Il a un gros nez et de tout petits yeux. En plus, il a l'air snob.

Clara Tu es jaloux, Nathan ! Il est célèbre et il a des milliers de fans.

Sophie Oui, c'est un peu méchant de dire ça, non ?

Clara En tout cas, j'ai envie d'aller à un de ses concerts.

Sophie Moi, ça m'intéresse aussi.

Yassine Et moi aussi peut-être. Ses chansons, je ne les connais pas bien.

Sophie Et toi, Nathan ? Tu viens avec nous ?

Nathan Ah non ! Je préfère aller chez le dentiste – c'est moins pénible.

Sophie Mais tu as de belles dents, Nathan.

Clara Tu as de belles dents, mais tu es mauvaise langue.

Yassine Ah ! Ah ! Ah ! Bien dit, Clara !

Nathan D'accord, je suis méchant ! Allez, vous voulez prendre quelque chose à boire ? C'est moi qui paie.



EN FRANCE

All large cities in France have a number of live music venues. In Paris there are dozens of them, the best known being the Olympia, the Trianon, the Cavern, the Gaité Lyrique, the Salle Pleyel (mainly classical music) and Bobino (currently a cabaret). Many of these date back to the 19th century. The Bataclan (opened 1865) was the target of a terrorist attack in November 2015, during which 130 people died and 350 were injured.

Quel type de garçon tu préfères ?

Sophie and Clara compare notes on the boys they see playing football. Clara asks Sophie what her ideal boy would be like. Sophie gives a good description of Nathan and is embarrassed to realise that he is listening right behind her.



Sophie



Clara



Nathan

1

Sophie Qui c'est, le grand brun à la chemise rouge ?
Clara C'est Ahmed. C'est un copain de Yassine.
Sophie Il est marocain ?
Clara Non, il est algérien.

2

Sophie Il est mignon, n'est-ce pas ?
Clara Oui. Et il est sympa. Mais je le trouve réservé.
Sophie Dommage. Moi, je préfère les garçons marrants.
Clara Comme Nathan, par exemple ?
Sophie Mais pourquoi est-ce que tu penses à lui ?
Clara Oh... comme ça...

3

Sophie Et le blond aux yeux bleus à la casquette noire ?
Clara Non, il a l'air prétentieux.
Sophie Ah bon ? Pour moi il a l'air un peu timide.
Clara En tout cas, il ne me plaît pas. Je préfère le grand brun au tee-shirt gris.

4

Sophie Alors, quel est ton garçon idéal, en somme ?
Clara Grand. Parce que moi je suis grande. Un garçon intelligent, qui aime la musique, le cinéma...
Sophie Et sportif ?
Clara Bof ! Ça m'est égal. Et toi, ton garçon idéal ?

5

Sophie Mon garçon idéal, il est grand, brun, marrant, sportif...
Clara Et le foot, il l'aime ?
Sophie Oui, bien sûr. Comme moi.
Clara Aha ! C'est une très bonne description de Nathan.

6

Nathan On parle de moi ?
Sophie Oh là là !
Nathan Mais Sophie, qu'est-ce que tu as ? Tu es toute rouge !
Clara C'est le soleil.
Nathan Pauvre Sophie !

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues in sections.

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking about and describing someone's appearance



A Il est comment ?

B Il a les cheveux noirs frisés et les yeux marron.

A Elle est comment ?

B Elle a les cheveux blonds et longs, et les yeux gris.

A Qui est-ce, le grand blond à la chemise rouge ?

B C'est un copain de Nathan.

A Et le blond aux yeux bleus à la casquette noire ?

B C'est Robert, un camarade de classe.

A Regarde la fille aux cheveux frisés. Qui est-ce ?

B Je ne la connais pas.

A Et le garçon là-bas au tee-shirt gris ?

B Je ne le connais pas.

2 Talking about someone's personality



A Il est sympa ?

B Oui, il est très sympa.

Il est adorable. Elle est adorable.

Il est marrant. Elle est marrante.

Tu es jaloux ! Tu es jalouse !

Il est réservé. Elle est réservée.

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

3 Expressing opinions about others



A Il te plaît ? / Elle te plaît ?

Il a l'air snob.

Elle a l'air prétentieux.

Elle a l'air un peu timide.

Il / Elle ne me plaît pas.

Il / Elle est moche.

Il est intelligent.

Elle est formidable.

Il est beau.

Elle est belle.

Pour moi, c'est le garçon idéal.

Pour moi, c'est la fille idéale.

4 Identifying physical features and clothing



le blond / la blonde

le rouquin / la rouquine

le brun / la brune

blonds

châtains

bruns

noirs

roux

gris



longs



courts



mi-longs



raides



frisés



en queue de cheval

Il / Elle a les yeux...



bleus



verts



marron

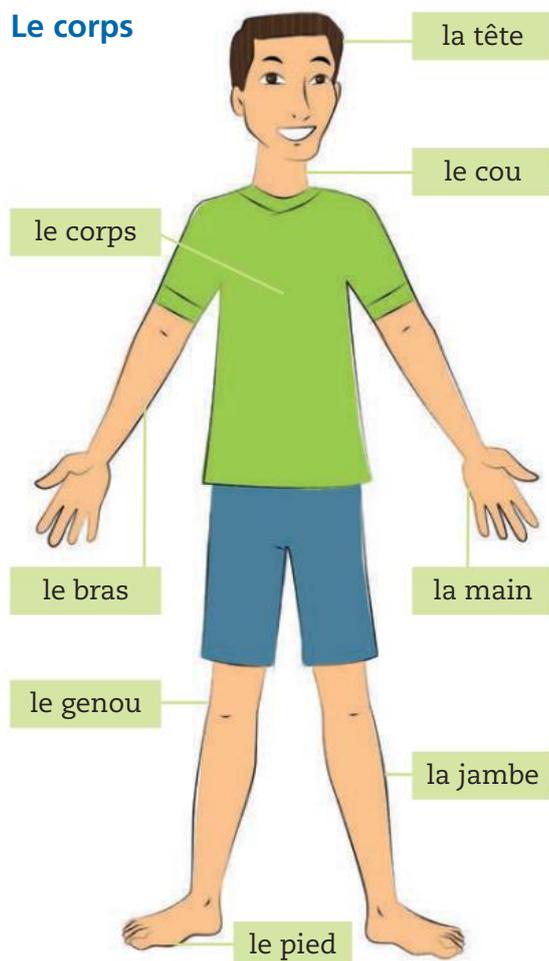


noirs

Le visage



Le corps



Les vêtements



des baskets noires



des lunettes



une casquette noire



une chemise rouge



un tee-shirt gris



un jean marron

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH



9.1

Qui est-ce ? Work in groups of four to six. Each member of the group brings a photo of a person from a magazine (or two photos if the group is small). The person should not be known to the group. Give each photo or sketch a number. Make sure that each photo or sketch has clear eye colour, hairstyle, face and body characteristics and clothing. Group members take turns to describe one of the numbered characters. The other students guess which of the characters is being described.



9.2

Le garçon / La fille idéale Work in groups and describe the type of boy or girl you prefer.



9.3

Vous le / la connaissez ? Qui est-ce ? Students can work in groups or this could be a whole-class activity. Take turns to describe a famous person (e.g. an actor, a singer, an athlete, a politician) who should be familiar to all the class, giving details such as age, appearance, personality, type of clothing worn and place of work. The others try to guess the identity of the person being described.



L'extra-terrestre

EN PLUS !

« *Tu as de belles dents, mais tu es mauvaise langue.* » The expression être *mauvaise langue* is a colourful way of saying that a person often makes nasty comments. Here are some other French expressions used to describe various types of personalities:

Elle est bavarde comme une pie.

Je suis souvent dans la lune.

Ils sont malheureux comme les pierres.

Toi, tu vois toujours la vie en rose !

This image depicts an English expression that has a similar meaning to one of the four French expressions listed above. Can you work out the English expression and its French equivalent?

Toi, tu vois toujours la vie en rose !



REFLECT AND CREATE

First work out what characteristic the expressions above refer to. Find someone you know to whom each of the above expressions might apply.

Phonétique et graphie

Comment prononcer *u* et *ou*



Listen to the audio to hear how the following words are pronounced.

tu	du	vu ('seen')	jus	pull
tout	doux ('gentle')	vous	joue	poule ('chicken')

It is important to distinguish between the sounds *u* and *ou* because there are many words in French in which the only difference is between these two vowels (e.g. *tu* and *tout*).

The *u* sound is always spelt *u* and the *ou* sound is always spelt *ou*, so they are easy to tell apart in writing.

For French *ou*, the closest sound we have in English is *ou* or *oo* as in 'soup' and 'moon', pronounced with a British accent. The French *u* sound does not exist in standard English.



Hint: For both vowels, your lips must be rounded and pushed forward. However, for *ou*, your tongue is held back and for *u* it is pushed forward.

Try this Say 'ou'. Then, without moving your lips, bring your tongue forward as if you were saying 'ee'. Yes, you've got it!



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Although the French *u* sound in words such as *tu* and *du* does not exist in standard English, a very similar sound does exist in Scottish English. You can hear it in the Scottish pronunciation of 'good', 'foot', 'book', 'look' and so on.

Grammaire

1 Complément d'objet direct (direct object pronoun)

Look at this sentence:

Je connais **Guillaume**.

Je is the subject, *connais* the verb, *Guillaume* the noun object following the verb.

Now look at this sentence:

Je **le** connais.

Je is the subject, *connais* the verb, but the noun *Guillaume* has been replaced by the pronoun *le*. This is called a direct object pronoun.

Look at these sentences:

- Je connais **Guillaume**. → Je **le** connais.
- Je connais **Clara**. → Je **la** connais.
- Je connais **Clara et Sophie**. → Je **les** connais.
- Je connais **Yassine et Sophie**. → Je **les** connais.

Note 1: The names Guillaume and Clara are replaced by *le* and *la*, meaning 'him' and 'her'. Clara et Sophie and Yassine et Sophie are both replaced by *les*, meaning 'them'.

Note 2: The direct pronoun object comes between the subject and the verb in a sentence, unlike in English, where it follows the verb.



Here is a complete list of French direct object pronouns:

me	(me)	nous	(us)
te	(you)	vous	(you)
le	(him, it)	les	(them)
la	(her, it)		

Note the position of the negative in these sentences:

Tu ne **la** connais pas ? Il ne **vous** regarde pas !



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

As you have seen, *le*, *la* and *les* can mean 'the' or 'him/her/it/them'. So, in a sentence, how can you tell which one it is, for example in the sentence below?

Les profs les appellent pour venir en classe.

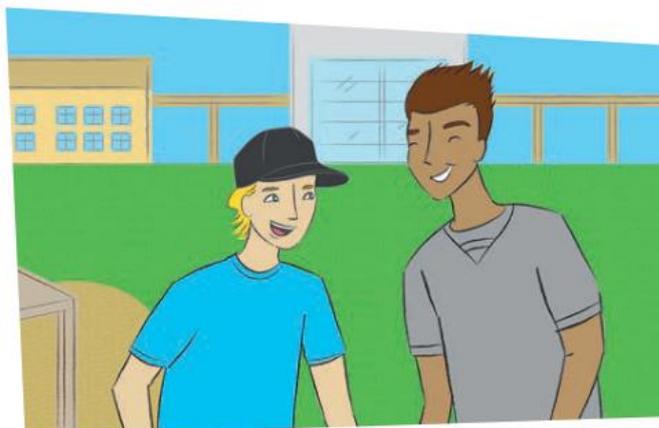
2 Les prépositions *au*, *à la*, *à l'* et *aux* pour décrire quelqu'un

These forms are often used to describe people's physical appearance and their clothing:

- la fille **à la** chemise rouge
- le grand brun **au** tee-shirt gris
- le garçon **aux** cheveux frisés
- le blond **aux** yeux bleus

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

How would you translate *au*, *à la* and *aux* into English in the sentences above? There are several possibilities.



3 Les verbes *être* et *avoir* pour décrire quelqu'un

We can use *être* when describing people in general:

Elle **est** grande.

Il **est** blond.

However, when describing parts of the body, *avoir* is used:

Elle **a** les yeux bleus.

Ils **ont** les cheveux frisés.

4 Le verbe *préférer*

préférer (to prefer)

je préfère

nous préférons

tu préfères

vous préférez

il / elle / on préfère

ils / elles préfèrent

Moi, je **préfère** les garçons marrants.

Quelle jupe tu **préfères** ? La rouge ou la noire ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Look at the conjugation of *préférer*. It seems like a regular -er verb but it is a bit different. What makes it different from regular -er verbs? And what will you have to be careful about when you use it in writing?

5 Les adjectifs

Rappel : Adjectives must agree in gender (masculine, feminine) and in number (singular, plural) with the noun they describe. (See *Unités 2* and *4* for a refresher.)

un lion blanc

une lionne blanche

des lions blancs

des lionnes blanches

La position des adjectifs

Most adjectives come after the noun they describe.

Je suis un(e) élève **australien(ne)**.

Ce sont des acrobates **merveilleux**.

Sophie est une fille **mignonne**.

Some adjectives come before the noun. These are generally very common adjectives with one or two syllables:

un **gros** chien

un **petit** lapin

un **grand** garçon

une **belle** fille

All adjectives of colour come after the noun:

un tee-shirt **gris**

une casquette **noire**

une chemise **rouge**

To express nationality

Look at these two examples:

Ses parents sont **maghrébins**, d'Algérie.

Moi, je préfère les gens qui acceptent tout le monde, les riches, les pauvres, les **Maghrébins**, les Gitans...

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

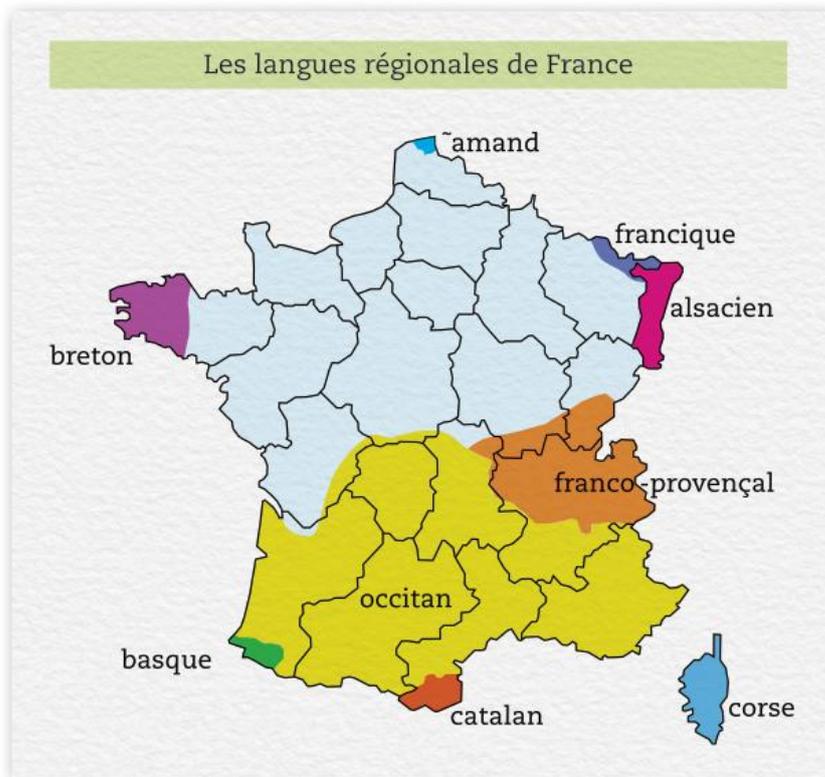
In the first example, why does the word *maghrébins* not begin with a capital letter, compared with the second example, which does?

French national identity

Although stereotyped notions about French identity may exist, such as a man with a black moustache and a striped T-shirt wearing a beret, France is a culturally diverse country. To start with, there are several regional groups that are linguistically and culturally different:

- In Brittany, the Bretons are a Celtic people similar to the Welsh, Scots and Irish in the United Kingdom.
- In the south of France, the Occitans and Basques see themselves as culturally distinct from the northern French.
- The island of Corsica, Napoleon's birthplace, has a culture and language closely linked to Italy.
- In the north-east province of Alsace, most people are multilingual, speaking French, German and Alsatian, a German dialect.

In these regions, almost everyone speaks French. For some people, the regional language is their native tongue, particularly in Alsace. Regional languages have official status; they can be studied in primary and secondary school, and are presented as a subject for the baccalaureate.



FIND OUT MORE

Has the language of your country been influenced by languages other than English? How?



EN FRANCE

Francique is a German dialect. Its name comes from the Franks, a Germanic people who settled in the north of France and Germany after the fall of the Roman Empire. This is where the name 'France' originated.

Catalan is an official language of Spain, along with Spanish.

Basque is spoken in the north of Spain as well as in France.

Flamand (Flemish) is a Dutch dialect and an official language of Belgium, along with French and German.

France regional greetings

- Alsacien: *Guete Tag! Wie geht's dir?*
- Corsican: *Salute. Bonghjornu. Cumu si?*
- Occitan: *Bonjorn! Cossi va?*
- Catalan: *Hola! / Bon dia! Com estàs?*
- Basque: *Kaixo! Zer moduz?*
- Breton: *Mat an traoù ganit?*



Shutterstock.com/sainthorant daniel

The idea of a nation

France has been a world power over the centuries, and has achieved cultural and political prestige that many French people today look back on with pride. Here are some of the reasons why that came about.

- **Saints:** The best known is Joan of Arc (Saint Joan, the 'Maid of Orleans'). At the age of 19 she led the French army against the English, who had occupied half of France. She was burnt at the stake by the English and her remains were thrown into the Seine in 1431.
- **The reign of kings:** For example, Louis XIV (*le Roi-Soleil*) reigned for 72 years from 1643 until his death in 1715. During his reign, France became one of the world's most influential nations and a centre of culture and science.
- **France's first emperor:** Napoleon Bonaparte was a dictator and very controversial, but still a major historical figure. One of his greatest achievements was to set up a legal system in accordance with the ideas of the French Revolution, including the division of France into mini-regions or *départements*, which still exist today (see the map on page 92).
- **Revolutions:** The most notable was the French Revolution. Although it resulted in terrible violence, the revolution left France with the concept of a republic rather than a monarchy or an empire. It is also famous for its motto *Liberté, Égalité, Fraternité* (Freedom, Equality, Brotherhood).
- **Philosophers:** People such as Descartes, Voltaire and Rousseau changed our ways of thinking.
- **Scientists and explorers:** Some of this group travelled the world. They included La Perouse, who was in Botany Bay at the time of the first European settlement in Australia.
- **Notable people:** There have been many people who have helped create the worldwide prestige of French language and literature, science and invention, arts and culture.



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

When talking about national identity for your country, what are some of the events, people and national characteristics you would mention?

FIND OUT MORE

In *Unité 8*, we mentioned Emperor Napoleon III (he was a bad speller), who ruled over the Second Empire. So why was he known as Napoleon III? There must have been a Napoleon II? What was the relationship between Napoleon III and Napoleon I? And what happened to Napoleon II (if indeed he existed)?



EN FRANCE

Two famous French names you might know:

Louis Pasteur (1822–1895)

If you look at the dairy products in your refrigerator, you may find that they are all labelled 'pasteurised'. Pasteur was the 'father of microbiology', because he showed how germs and bacteria caused disease and he helped to develop immunisation.

The process of pasteurisation, which he developed, destroys the harmful bacteria that can develop in dairy products, causing serious illnesses.

Joseph-Ignace Guillotin (1738–1814)

The execution method of the guillotine, which beheads the victim, was used during the French Revolution and remained France's standard method of judicial execution until the abolition of capital punishment in 1981. It was recommended during the revolution as a humane method of execution because death was immediate and thus (theoretically) less painful than hanging and other execution methods.

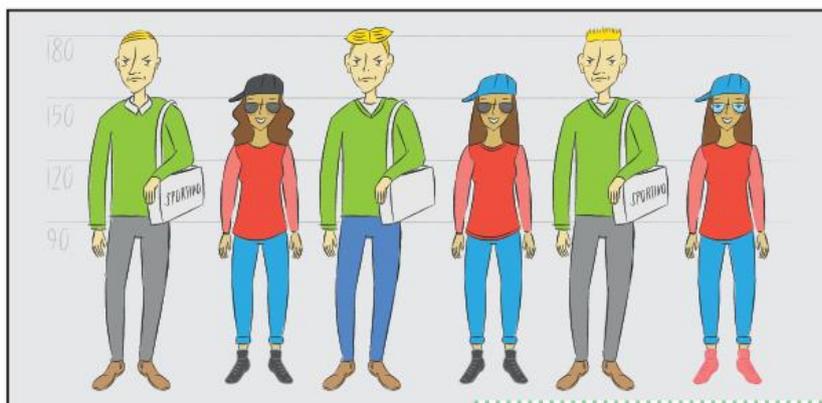


BRAQUAGE À LA BANQUE !

La police recherche deux bandits. Un témoin donne la description suivante :

« Ils sont deux, un homme et une femme. L'homme est un grand blond très mince. Il a les yeux bleus. Il a les cheveux très courts, coupés en brosse. Il a le nez long et de très grandes oreilles. Il porte un jean gris et un pull vert. Il porte l'argent volé dans un sac blanc avec le logo « Sportivo » dessus. Attention ! Il est armé d'un pistolet. Il a l'air méchant et dangereux.

« La femme au contraire a l'air sympathique. Elle est même très belle. Elle porte un jean bleu et des baskets noires. Elle est petite et brune, et elle



a les cheveux longs et raides. Elle porte aussi des lunettes noires et une casquette bleue. C'est une casquette de baseball. Elle n'est pas armée, mais elle a l'air très sportive. C'est peut-être une karaté-ka. »

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Regardez l'image des six personnes. Identifiez les deux bandits.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Work with a partner. Choose the penfriend you would like to have and tell your partner why.

On cherche des correspondants

NATHALIE
11 mai 2017
22:15

Bonjour tout le monde ! Je m'appelle Nathalie et j'ai quinze ans. Je suis suisse et j'habite à Genève – c'est là où on trouve les sièges de l'UNESCO et la Croix Rouge. Je suis grande, j'ai les cheveux roux et les yeux verts. Je ne suis pas mince mais je suis très en forme parce que je fais beaucoup de sports – du ski acrobatique, de l'alpinisme et du deltaplane. J'adore les sports extrêmes ! Je suis sympa... je pense... Enfin mes copains me disent que je suis sympa ! Je cherche des correspondantes et des correspondants francophones, ou anglophones – je parle bien l'anglais.

Répondre Citer

OUVÉ
15 mai 2017
09:22

Salut ! Moi, je m'appelle Ouvé. Je suis kanak et j'habite à Nouméa, la capitale de la Nouvelle-Calédonie. Vous connaissez ce pays ? C'est dans l'océan Pacifique, à l'est de l'Australie. J'ai seize ans, je suis grand et j'ai les cheveux noirs et les yeux marron. J'adore le foot – un jour j'espère jouer en Europe. J'aime aussi la musique – le rap, le reggae et le métal. J'aime aussi la musique africaine. Je joue de la guitare et du djembé. Je cherche des correspondants francophones du monde entier pour échanger des idées sur la musique – et peut-être pour échanger des fichiers de musique.

Répondre Citer

GILLES
20 mai 2017
20:45

Bonjour ! Je m'appelle Gilles. Je suis québécois et j'ai seize ans. J'habite à Trois-Rivières, une petite ville entre Montréal et la capitale, Québec (Quebec City). Je suis à l'École Secondaire des Pionniers. Je suis grand et mince. J'ai les cheveux blonds et les yeux bleus. Je suis timide et un peu réservé. Je n'aime pas beaucoup le sport mais j'adore la lecture, la musique classique et les jeux vidéo. C'est peut-être à cause de ça que je porte des lunettes ! Je joue du violon depuis l'âge de cinq ans. Mon ambition, c'est de jouer dans un orchestre. Je cherche des correspondants pour chatter et pour échanger des idées sur la musique, les livres et les jeux vidéo.

Répondre Citer

Choose a French person (past or present) who is internationally famous and who has contributed to the image of France by influencing the world in music, art, gastronomy, fashion, science, technology or politics. Find out what this person did, when they lived, why they became famous and their influence on the world. Present your story to the class with images, photos and videos.

Here are some possible names: Blaise Pascal, the Montgolfière brothers, Louis Daguerre, Victor Hugo, Auguste Rodin, Louis Braille, the Lumière brothers, Alexandre Gustave Eiffel, Marie Curie, Louise Michèle, Charles Blondin, Coco Chanel, Edith Piaf, Jacques Cousteau, Jacques Tati, Alain Robert ('Spiderman'), Philippe Petit (tightrope walker), or modern singers and musicians. However, do not hesitate to present your own French hero or heroine.

VOCABULAIRE



Describing physical appearance

avoir...	to have ...
les cheveux (mpl) frisés	curly hair
les yeux (mpl) bleus	blue eyes
le nez long	long nose
de belles dents (fpl)	good teeth
la chemise rouge	red shirt
la casquette noire	black cap
le tee-shirt gris	grey T-shirt

Talking about performance

être un super chanteur	to be a great singer
chanter faux	to sing off key
passer à	to appear at
avoir des milliers de fans	to have thousands of fans

Describing character

être...	to be ...
jaloux / jalouse	jealous
célèbre	famous
marrant(e)	funny
prétentieux / prétentieuse	pretentious
timide	shy
idéal(e)	ideal
intelligent(e)	intelligent
nul(le)	hopeless

Expressing disapproval

Tu es mauvaise langue.	You're spiteful.
Il ne me plaît pas.	I don't like him.
Il / Elle a l'air snob.	He / She looks snobby.
Il / Elle est moche. (fam)	He / She is ugly.

Expressing disbelief, disinterest

Je préfère le dentiste.	I prefer the dentist.
Tu plaisantes !	You're joking!
Ça m'est égal.	I don't care.
Je ne connais pas...	I don't know (someone).

Expressing interest, approval

J'ai envie de...	I'm keen to ...
Ça m'intéresse.	I'm interested.
Bien dit !	Well said!
Tu viens avec nous ?	Are you coming with us?

Vous désirez, mesdemoiselles ?

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask about buying clothing items in shops
- offer and recommend items
- ask about clothing sizes and colours
- use the numbers 60–100
- ask for and give prices of items
- talk about buying an item
- talk about bargains.

You will also learn about:

- shopping in France (department stores)
- indoor and outdoor shopping
- the European money system.



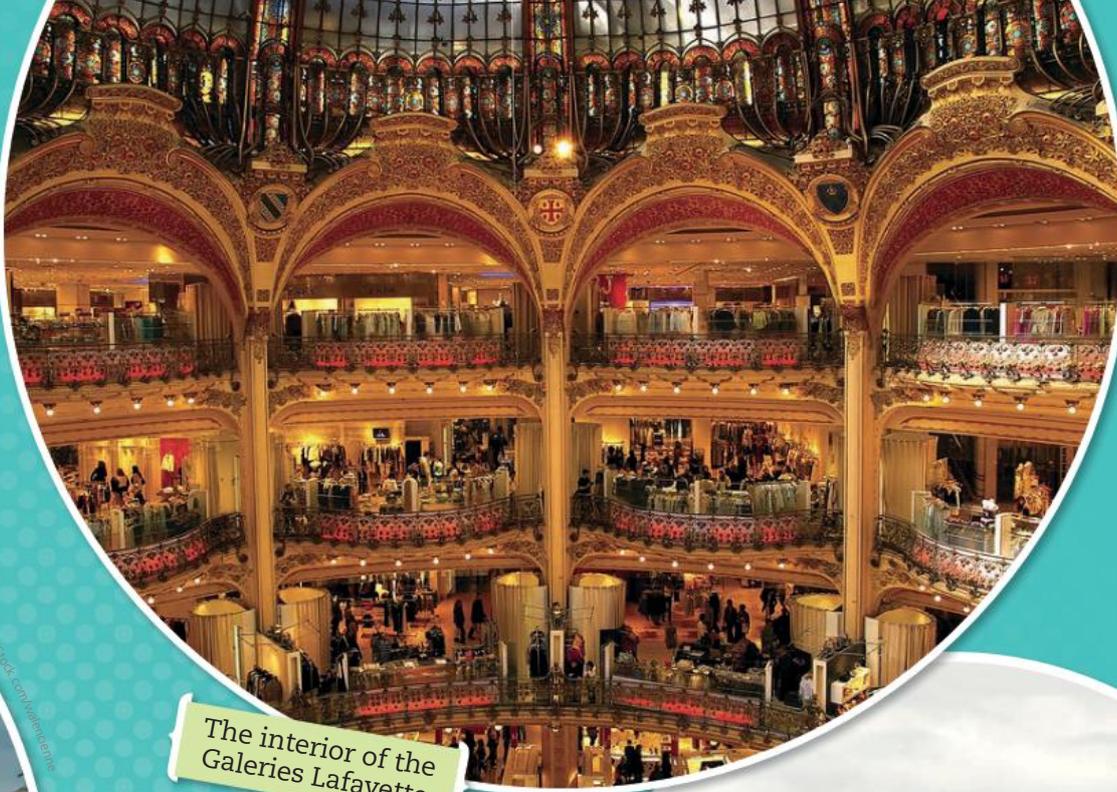
A view of the main Galeries Lafayette store on Boulevard Haussmann in Paris. The store now operates in a number of other locations in France and in other countries such as Germany, Italy, Indonesia and Dubai.



Les puces de Saint-Ouen, the Saint-Ouen flea market in Paris

The Barbès open-air food market in the 18th arrondissement. It is the largest and most ethnically diverse market in Paris. It is also very good value.





The interior of the Galeries Lafayette

shutterstock.com/Andrius_Girdis

istock.com/veronika



L'hypermarché Auchan, a large shopping complex in Calais, on the north coast of France, is frequented by many English daytrippers. Other French supermarket and hypermarket chains include Casino, Leclerc and Carrefour.

Alamy Stock Photo/CosyK



A Monoprix store in the city of Nancy. As the store's name indicates, it sells cheap products and is good value. There are over 300 Monoprix stores in France, at least one store in every large town.

istock.com/bovornum



Vendeuse



Sophie



Clara

Aux Galeries Neumann

Sophie is looking for a warm winter jacket in a large department store. She doesn't want to buy a sheepskin jacket and she doesn't like the black leather jackets she tries on. Finally, she buys a fashionable parka with a fur-lined collar.

1

Vendeuse Bonjour mesdemoiselles.
Je peux vous aider ?

Sophie Je cherche un blouson, s'il vous plaît.

Vendeuse Très bien. Nous avons une gamme très large de blousons. En cuir, en jean, en coton.

Sophie Pas en coton. Quelque chose qui me tient chaud.



2

Vendeuse Ah ! Pour tenir chaud, je recommande cette veste en peau de mouton.

Sophie En peau de mouton ! Oh non !

Clara Ma copine est pour la protection des animaux.



3

Vendeuse Eh bien, dans ce cas je suggère ces blousons en similicuir. Ce n'est pas du vrai cuir. Par exemple, voyez, ce modèle zippé. Vous voulez l'essayer ?

Sophie Oui, s'il vous plaît.

Vendeuse Vous faites quelle taille ?

Sophie Euh... trente-huit, je pense.



4

Vendeuse C'est très élégant, non ?

Sophie Non, j'ai l'air d'une motarde. Et c'est un peu serré.

Clara Ça ne va pas avec la jupe. Mais avec un jean...

Sophie Oui, je sais. Mais ce blouson ne me plaît pas.



5

Vendeuse Et cette parka ? Elle est imperméable, confortable mais légère. Et avec un col de fourrure. Euh... de la fausse fourrure, bien sûr.

Sophie Ça coûte combien ?

Vendeuse Cent quarante-deux euros seulement. C'est en solde, alors c'est une très bonne affaire.

Sophie Il y a un choix de couleurs ?

Vendeuse Oui, beige, rouge, marron et bleu clair.

Sophie Je préfère le beige.



6

Vendeuse Voilà, mademoiselle. Et votre carte bancaire. Merci.

Sophie Merci de votre aide, madame. Au revoir.

Clara Au revoir.

Vendeuse Au revoir et bonne journée. Merci !



Au marché aux puces

Yassine and Nathan are at the flea market. Yassine needs a pair of solid hiking boots. Both Yassine and the salesman are good at bargaining.



Nathan



Yassine



Marchand



1

Nathan Pourquoi tu viens ici pour acheter des chaussures ?

Yassine Parce qu'ici les prix sont plus intéressants. Et surtout, ici on peut marchander.



2

Marchand Bienvenue, les garçons ! Les meilleures chaussures aux meilleurs prix !! On a de tout: des bottes, des baskets, des sandales, des espadrilles, des chaussures de sport...



3

Marchand Oh là là !! Vous avez besoin de chaussures tous les deux !

Nathan Quoi ? Mes baskets, elles sont toutes neuves !

Yassine Moi, par contre, je cherche des bottes pour l'hiver.



4

Marchand Vous avez froid aux pieds ? Alors je vous propose ces bottes 'Ugg' d'Australie.

Yassine 'Ugg' ?

Marchand Oui, c'est le mot australien pour 'bottes'.

Nathan Mais non ! Les Australiens parlent anglais. C'est tout simplement la marque !



5

Yassine J'ai besoin de bottes solides et imperméables pour faire de longues promenades.

Marchand Pas de problème. Voilà des bottes 'Yeti', légères, solides, indestructibles.

Yassine Mmm. Oui, c'est exactement ce que je cherche. Elles coûtent combien ?

Marchand Normalement, cent quatre-vingts euros. Mais pour toi, mon frère, cent cinquante.

Yassine Oh ! Dommage ! C'est trop cher pour moi. Je suis étudiant. Au revoir.



6

Marchand Attends ! Attends ! Cent trente ! C'est ma dernière offre.

Yassine Cent dix. C'est tout l'argent que j'ai sur moi.

Marchand Aïe ! Aïe ! Aïe ! C'est la ruine pour moi ! Mais d'accord.



7

Yassine Au revoir et merci, mon frère.

Marchand Alors, jeune homme, tu n'achètes pas de baskets ? Mes prix sont imbattables, non ?

Nathan Oui, oui... Un autre jour peut-être. Bonne journée.



EN FRANCE

Ugg boots (*bottes Ugg Australia*) have become a very popular footwear in France and all over Europe. You can find them in the catalogues of the upmarket department stores such as Galeries Lafayette and Printemps, where they sell for 150–200 euros. The Australian-made ones are the best because they are made from sheepskin. Because of their popularity, there are many cheap, artificial variations of the genuine Ugg Australia brand.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues in sections.

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking about buying clothing items in shops



A Vous désirez, monsieur ?

B Je voudrais des chaussures.

A Qu'est-ce que vous cherchez, mademoiselle ?

B Je cherche un blouson ou une veste.

A Je peux vous aider, madame ?

B Oui, j'ai besoin de vêtements d'hiver.

A Alors, jeune homme, vous achetez ces baskets ?

B Merci, non. Un autre jour, peut-être.

2 Offering and recommending items



Nous avons une gamme très large de vêtements.

Je recommande cette veste en peau de mouton.

3 Asking about sizes and colours



Vous faites quelle taille ?

Qu'est-ce que vous voulez comme modèle ?

Qu'est-ce que vous préférez comme style ?

Qu'est-ce que vous aimez comme couleur ?

4 Asking for / giving prices of items



A C'est combien ?

B C'est cent cinquante euros.

C'est trop cher.

Ce n'est pas trop cher.

C'est un prix intéressant.

Vous avez des modèles moins chers ?

Au marché aux puces...



C'est trop cher.

Shutterstock.com/Elean Djour

5 Talking about buying the item



C'est parfait, je le/la/les prends.

Je l'/les achète.

Non, ça ne va pas, je ne le/la/les prends pas.

Je ne l'/les achète pas.

C'est trop petit.

C'est trop grand.

C'est trop large.

C'est trop serré.

6 Talking about bargains



Ce produit est en solde !

Les meilleures chaussures aux meilleurs prix !

Au marché, on peut marchander !

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

10.7



Vous désirez ? Work in groups of three. You are in the men's or women's clothing department of a *grand magasin*. Two of you are customers and have 50 euros each to spend on clothing, and one of you is the salesperson.

10.2



Qu'est-ce qu'on achète comme cadeau ? Work in pairs. You want to buy a present for a friend. Decide what kind of person they are and what they like or don't like.



Moi, j'achète...



EN PLUS !

Read this short dialogue:

Cinq cents euros ! Cette veste coûte les yeux de la tête !

Ah oui, ça, c'est jeter l'argent par les fenêtres, n'est-ce pas ?

En ce moment, je n'ai pas un sou !

What does *coûter les yeux de la tête* mean in terms of the jacket's price? What does *jeter l'argent par les fenêtres* suggest about what kind of a purchase this would be? And what does the expression *ne pas avoir un sou* say about this person's financial situation? (Do you think the person bought the jacket?) How would these expressions be said in English?



60	70	80	90	100
soixante	soixante-dix	quatre-vingts	quatre-vingt-dix	cent
soixante et un	soixante et onze	quatre-vingt-un	quatre-vingt-onze	
soixante-deux	soixante-douze	quatre-vingt-deux	quatre-vingt-douze	
soixante-trois	soixante-treize	quatre-vingt-trois	quatre-vingt-treize	
...	
	soixante-dix-sept		quatre-vingt-dix-sept	
	soixante-dix-huit		quatre-vingt-dix-huit	
	soixante-dix-neuf		quatre-vingt-dix-neuf	

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Adding prices or numbers. Revise numbers 1–60 and make sure you have mastered numbers 61–100. Work in pairs and ask each other addition questions, such as:

– *Trente-cinq et quarante-cinq (euros). Ça fait combien ?*

– *Ça fait quatre-vingts (euros).*

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Why do the French use 20 as a base for counting between 70 and 100? Before the French Revolution, France had a completely different system of weights, measurements and counting, based on 12 and 20. During the revolution, everything was decimalised (base 10) and became a metric system – metres, kilograms, litres and Celsius. However, the numbering system did not change entirely, which is why French numbers from 70 to 100 use base 20, so 78 (*soixante dix-huit*) is 'sixty eighteen' and 80 (*quatre-vingts*) is 'four twenties'. The Belgians and the Swiss prefer a full decimal system, so for 70, 80 and 90 they say *septante*, *octante* (or *huitante*) and *nonante*.

FIND OUT MORE

In many English-speaking countries, the old French measuring system influenced many aspects of life, notably money. Until 1966–67, Australia and New Zealand had the British monetary system of pounds, shillings and pence. How many shillings were there in a pound and how many pence in a shilling? The sign for this currency was **£.s.d.**, also written 'l.s.d.' (nothing to do with the drug!). What did these letters stand for?



Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer -er / -ère et -ier / -ière



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words.

parler → manger → boulang~~er~~ → boulangère → mère → père
premier → janvier → courrier → première → derrière → matière

Group 1: Words ending in *-er* (e.g. *parler*) are pronounced like the *é* in *café*. The *r* is not pronounced. For words ending in *-ère* (e.g. *première*), the *r* is pronounced.

Group 2: When a word ends in *-ier* or *-ière*, the same rule applies. The *i* is pronounced like the 'y' in the English word 'yes'. The *-ier* sounds like 'yé' and the *-ière* sounds like 'yère'.

Attention! *Hier* (yesterday) is an exception to the Group 2 rule because the *r* is pronounced, just as if it were spelt *-ière*.

2 Comment prononcer -tion et -ssion



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words.

atten~~tion~~ → situ~~ation~~ → éduca~~tion~~ → passion → mission

The endings *-tion* and *-ssion* are both pronounced the same way. Note that the *t* in *-tion* is pronounced as an *s*.

To form these sounds, say 's' then the 'y' sound (as in 'yes') to form 'sy', then say *on* (as in *allons*). Now run the sounds together: 's' – 'y' – 'on'.

Attention! The word *question* is an exception to this rule because the *t* is pronounced.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

The above words are spelt the same in English. Say them in English. The pronunciation is quite different from the French. But is there any difference between the pronunciation of '-tion' and '-ssion' in English?

Grammaire

1 Les adverbes d'intensité

As in English, most French adjectives (e.g. *grand*, *petit*, *cher*) can be modified by adverbs of intensity, which come before the adjective:

C'est cher. → C'est assez cher. → C'est très cher. → C'est trop cher.
C'est trop cher. → Ce n'est pas trop cher.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

C'est très cher. Which word is the adjective and which is the adverb of intensity? What is the function of *cher* and what is that of *très* in this sentence? Can you put the four expressions above in order in terms of their intensity?

2 Les adjectifs démonstratifs

Demonstrative adjectives ('this', 'that', 'these', 'those') come before a noun and can replace articles. Like articles, French demonstratives (*ce, cet, cette, ces*) must agree in number and gender with the noun:

	ce blouson	(masculine singular)
	cet argent	(masculine singular before a vowel)
	cette veste	(feminine singular)
	ces vêtements	(masculine or feminine plural)

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Why are there two masculine forms for the demonstrative adjective 'this'? Why is there only one feminine form?

How do you make the distinction between 'this book' and 'that book' in French?

French demonstratives do not distinguish between 'this' (here) and 'that' (there). To make this distinction you can say, for example:

ce livre-**ci**

ce livre-**là**

3 Utiliser deux verbes dans une phrase

Rappel : As we have already seen, when two verbs are used together, the second verb takes the form of the infinitive. This is also the case when you use *je voudrais* ('I would like') with another verb:

Je **voudrais acheter** des lunettes de soleil.

Je **voudrais trouver** un beau chapeau.

Et je **voudrais payer** avec ma carte bancaire.

4 Le verbe acheter

The verb *acheter* uses a similar conjugation to the verb *préférer* in *Unité 9*.

acheter (to buy)	
j'achète	nous achetons
tu achètes	vous achetez
il / elle / on achète	ils / elles achètent

Qu'est-ce que tu **achètes** comme cadeau ?

J'**achète** un beau sac à dos pour Philippe.

Nous **achetons** des cadeaux pour toute la famille.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What is the difference in pronunciation between the è in *achète* and the e in *achetons*?

5 Le verbe vendre

The verb *vendre* does not take an *s* in the third person singular written form.

vendre (to sell)	
je vends	nous vendons
tu vends	vous vendez
il / elle / on vend	ils / elles vendent

Ici on **vend** des lunettes de soleil formidables !

Qu'est-ce que vous **vendez** comme chaussures ?

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Is there a difference in pronunciation between the forms of the verb *vendre* in the first and second singular (*je/tu vends*) and in the third person singular (*il/elle/on vend*)?

Le shopping

Shops and markets in France's big cities are the ideal place to indulge in the French custom of strolling through the streets – seeing, and being seen.

Paris is the home of haute couture. This term refers to original one-off creations, as opposed to ready-made clothing (*prêt-à-porter*). Haute couture shops, named after their designers, are famous worldwide: Christian Dior, Pierre Cardin, Chanel, Gianni Versace, Givenchy, Nina Ricci and Yves Saint Laurent.

For most people looking to buy clothes and other articles, there are the department stores (*les grands magasins*), which are patronised by Parisians as well as tourists and visitors. The best known of these is the Galeries Lafayette. The oldest is Le Bon Marché. It was founded in 1838 and enlarged in 1872 with help from Gustave Eiffel, creator of the Eiffel Tower. The department store Au Printemps is noted for its innovative household goods section as well as its clothing.

There are also various specialist boutiques selling both haute couture and vintage clothing, for example Le Mouton à Cinq Pattes ('the five-legged sheep').

The FNAC store chain is the largest retailer in France of books, music and electronic equipment. It is *the* place to buy computers, smartphones and all the latest digital devices. All of their products are also available online.



Shutterstock.com/fashionStock.com



Alamy Stock Photo/business

The best sales (*les soldes*) are held in January and July, although you can find sale items before Christmas. The fashion shops are not just for women. Men's fashions also range from *haute couture* (often by the same designers as for women) to *prêt-à-porter*. Many top designers of adult clothes also have boutiques for children.

The flea markets (*les marchés aux puces*) in Paris are popular tourist attractions as well as places where you can buy almost anything – books, collectables such as stamps and coins, jewellery, paintings, clothing, traditional items, weird items, precious items ... junk for some, objects of desire for others. There are also stamp markets, book markets and art markets that are well worth a visit.

People can buy food at the *supermarchés* (Monoprix, Casino, Aldi) and the giant *hypermarchés* (Carrefour, Leclerc). But many people prefer to buy food in the markets – *les marchés de rue* in the big cities and *les marchés de village*. These markets are open all year, whatever the weather, usually from 9 a.m. to 1.30 p.m. In Paris, there are 65 open-air markets and 13 covered markets. For local residents, shopping in the street markets is also a social occasion. They chat with their neighbours and with the stallholders, most of whom they know well.

L'euro, monnaie d'Europe

The euro replaced the French franc in January 2002, and is the currency of many countries in Europe. There are 100 *centimes* in one euro.

While the euro notes are the same for all eurozone countries, the coins vary. Coins have the same design on one side but countries can choose their own motifs on the reverse side. In spite of this, the coins can be used anywhere in the eurozone. You can buy a drink in Paris using a coin with a motif from Cyprus, Estonia, Slovakia or any one of the eurozone countries.

The eurozone countries often issue coins with new motifs. The 2-euro coin below, issued in 2012, celebrates the 100th anniversary of the birth of Abbé Pierre. Abbé Pierre was a French Catholic priest who, in 1949, founded the Emmaus movement, which helps poor and homeless people and refugees. He was one of the most popular social reformers in France.



With permission Monnaie de Paris

Forum fringues : où acheter des vêtements pas chers à Paris ?

Ce forum est modéré. Tous les messages sont validés par un administrateur avant de paraître sur le forum.

PRINCESSE FLEUR

11 mai 2017 22:15

Coucou les filles!

Je cherche des endroits où il y a des magasins de vêtements et de chaussures pas chers. Je connais des magasins de ce genre au marché de Clignancourt. Ils y vendent tous types de vêtements et ils ont toutes les tailles. Et des chaussures à partir de 15 euros.

Merci!!!!

HORTENSE

15 mai 2017 09:22

Ça m'intéresse aussi, je n'ai plus envie de dépenser de l'argent pour des chiffrons.

[Répondre](#) [Citer](#)

LADY DIVA

20 mai 2017 20:45

Désolée les filles, mais dans les marchés vous trouvez seulement des chiffrons. Pour acheter des vêtements de qualité, il faut aller dans les grands magasins comme Au Printemps ou les Galeries Lafayette. Mais regardez bien leurs catalogues sur Internet – ils ont quelquefois des soldes vraiment intéressantes.

[Répondre](#) [Citer](#)

BATWOMAN

02 juin 2017 21:35

Je suis d'accord, Lady Diva. Et c'est la même chose pour les chaussures à 10 ou 15 euros.

Au bout d'un mois, elles craquent ! 😞

[Répondre](#) [Citer](#)

ZIPPOFLAMME

14 juin 2017 16:07

Pas vrai !! Tu chantes faux, Lady Diva. Il y a de très bonnes affaires dans les marchés. Mais il y a deux règles essentielles : (i) visite tous les stands et compare les prix, (ii) n'accepte **jamais, jamais, jamais** le premier prix cité par le vendeur. Prends le temps de marchander. Par exemple, si le vendeur dit 100 euros, tu offres 40 euros. Après quelques minutes (ou une demi-heure) tu achètes ton vêtement pour 50 euros. Mais si tu es riche, vas-y, prends toutes tes cartes de crédit et achète des vêtements super chers au Printemps !

[Répondre](#) [Citer](#)

LADY DIVA

16 juin 2017 08:34

Salut Zippoflamme ! Merci pour ces conseils. Demain (samedi) je vais au marché de Clignancourt pour les mettre en pratique. Alors, à demain peut-être – je suis sûre que tu es vendeuse là-bas !

[Répondre](#) [Citer](#)

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Des cadeaux pour Inès et Daniel

C'est bientôt l'anniversaire de votre copine Inès et de votre copain Daniel. Vous voulez un petit cadeau pour ces deux personnes que vous aimez bien. Voici une description d'Inès et Daniel :

- Daniel, 15 ans. Il est sportif et il aime faire du camping et des randonnées dans les montagnes. Il s'habille bien et il aime les accessoires comme les foulards, les ceintures, les sacs et les portefeuilles.
- Inès, 15 ans. Comme Daniel, elle est sportive. Elle aime le camping et les randonnées à vélo. Elle s'intéresse à l'histoire culturelle et elle aime collectionner des objets du vingtième siècle.

Choisissez vos cadeaux dans les catalogues ci-dessous. Vous avez un budget total de 70 euros pour les deux cadeaux. Justifiez votre choix et discutez avec vos camarades.



Catalogue A

MAGASIN « À la Belle Étoile » – Camping et randonnées

Prix réduits sur tous les articles. Profitez de la qualité de nos produits pour passer vos vacances à la belle étoile en tout confort !



Poche à eau

22€

Multi-outil,
cuillère et
fourchette

22.50€

Réchaud à
gaz jetboilà partir de
39€

Party grill à gaz

à partir de
43€Vous n'avez pas
d'allumettes ?
Il fait froid ?
Faites comme
les cowboys
du wild West !

Pierre à feu

12€



Bouilloire 1 litre

18€

TU PORTES UN BEAU PANTALON, UNE BELLE CHEMISE, DE BELLES CHAUSSURES ET UNE VESTE À LA DERNIÈRE MODE. ET PUIS... ???? DES A-C-C-E-S-S-O-I-R-E-S, BIEN SÛR !

Accessoires pour hommes



CEINTURE EN SIMILICUIR

Pour les jeunes tigres 25€



PORTEFEUILLE IMITATION CROCO 27€



TONGS EN VRAI CUIR

30€



FOULARD MULTICOLORE

30€



BANDANA MOTIF CACHEMIRE 15€



CHEMISE D'ÉTÉ

22€



EN FRANCE

Although we now associate jeans and denim with the United States, the cloth and the garment were first produced in France in the 19th century. In the American west, cowboys, miners and other labourers needed tough and durable clothing, particularly trousers. The most suitable cloth was a serge fabric made in the southern French town of Nîmes, known as 'serge de Nîmes', which was shortened in English to 'denim'. The name of the denim trousers came from the town where they were first made, Genoa in Italy, which in French is called 'Gênes' – so, in English they were called 'jeans'.

Catalogue C

Boutique « Trésors du passé »



Objets d'art du 20^e siècle « Le passé est toujours présent »



35€

Cafetière 1930



40€

Citroën Déesse 19



30€

Réveille-matin 1940



Boucles d'oreille 1928 (imitation)

35€



38€

Calendrier perpétuel 1950



32€

Lunettes de soleil rétro des années 1950

PROJET

You are on holiday in Paris and you are looking to buy three presents to take back to Australia – one for a school friend, one for an adult member of your family and one for a young person you know (e.g. a 7-year-old). You go to various *grands magasins* to find these items; for example, an item of clothing, a small piece of jewellery, an electronic device, perfume, music, a video, a book in French

or a poster – something that you think these people would like.

Search French online sites such as Galeries Lafayette and FNAC to find what is available and at what prices, then choose the items you are going to buy.

Briefly describe the presents you have chosen:
*C'est un(e)... C'est pour... Cela coûte...
C'est cher / pas cher. C'est (couleur). C'est grand / petit.*

VOCABULAIRE



Talking about buying and bargains

dépenser de l'argent	to spend money
être en solde	to be on sale
être une bonne affaire	to be a bargain
une offre	an offer
coûter	to cost
un prix intéressant	a low price
marchander	to bargain
une carte de crédit	a credit card
la carte bancaire	a bank card
payer par carte, par chèque, en espèces	to pay by card, by cheque, in cash

Talking about clothing

un blouson	short jacket
une veste	hip-length jacket
une parka	parka, knee-length coat
la mode	fashion
la taille	size
un modèle	model
un col de fourrure	fur collar
des bottes (fpl)	boots
la marque	brand
en cuir	leather
en jean	jean material
en coton	cotton
en peau de mouton	sheepskin
en similicuir	leatherette
un peu rétro	a bit vintage
des chiffons	old clothes, bits and pieces
le rayon de vêtements femmes	women's clothing department
le rayon de vêtements hommes	men's clothing department

Useful expressions when shopping

Bonjour. Je peux vous aider ?	Hello. May I help you?
Je cherche... / J'ai besoin de...	I'm looking for ... / I need ...
Je recommande... / Je vous propose...	I recommend ... / I suggest ...
Par exemple, voyez ce modèle.	For example, this model.
Vous voulez essayer ?	Would you like to try it on?
Oui, s'il vous plaît.	Yes, please.
Vous faites quelle taille ?	What size are you?
Ça coûte combien ?	How much is it?
C'est trop cher pour moi.	It's too expensive for me.
C'est exactement ce que je cherche.	It's just what I'm looking for.
Merci de votre aide, madame.	Thank you for your help, madam.

Useful adjectives

vrai(e)	true, real
zipé(e)	zipped
serré(e)	tight
imperméable	waterproof
léger / légère	light
faux / fausse	fake, false
imbattable	unbeatable
confortable	comfortable

COMMUNICATION

Now I know how to ...

- describe someone's appearance
Il a les cheveux noirs frisés et les yeux marron.
Elle a les cheveux blonds et longs, et les yeux gris.
Qui est le blond aux yeux bleus à la casquette noire ?
- talk about someone's personality
Elle est adorable et marrante.
Il est marrant mais un peu jaloux.
- express opinions about others
Il a l'air snob.
Elle a l'air prétentieux.
Elle a l'air un peu timide.
Pour moi, c'est le garçon idéal.
Pour moi, c'est la fille idéale
- ask about buying clothing items in shops
Vous désirez, monsieur ?
Qu'est-ce que vous cherchez, mademoiselle ?
J'ai besoin de vêtements d'hiver.
Qu'est-ce que vous voulez comme modèle ?
Vous faites quelle taille ?
Qu'est-ce que vous aimez comme couleur ?
- offer and recommend clothing items
Nous avons une gamme très large de vêtements.
Je recommande cette veste qui tient chaud.
- talk about prices of items
C'est combien ? C'est cent cinquante euros.
C'est cher. / C'est un prix intéressant.
- talk about buying the item.
C'est parfait, je l' / les achète.
Non, ça ne va pas, je ne le / la / les prends pas.

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- use direct object pronouns in a sentence
- describe someone using *être*, *avoir* and the prepositions *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*
- use the verb *préférer* in the present tense
- use adjectives correctly before or after the noun
- use a range of adverbs of intensity – *assez*, *très*, *trop*
- use the appropriate demonstrative adjective (*ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*) before a noun
- distinguish between 'this book' and 'that book' in French
- use the verbs *acheter* and *vendre*.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- Name four regional areas in France where one can see differences in language and culture.
- What are some of the regional languages still spoken and studied in French schools and universities?
- Which regional languages of France are related to German and Italian?
- Where did the motto *Liberté, Égalité, Fraternité* come from?
- Name some famous historical figures who are part of France's national heritage.
- Who was La Perouse and how is he linked with the first European colony in Australia?
- Why are the names Louis Pasteur and Joseph-Ignace Guillotin well known in history?
- Name some famous French haute couture brands.
- Name some of the famous French *grands magasins*.
- What could you buy at a *marché aux puces*?
- Where could you buy food in France other than at a *supermarché*?
- If you had a 2-euro coin with the image of French priest Abbé Pierre on it, could you use it in Italy or Germany?

SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand what to ask or how to respond in certain situations.

- A friend says something a bit nasty. What do you say to them?
- A friend makes a statement you do not think is true. What do you say?
- A friend asks you if you find a boy / a girl attractive. What would they say?
- You think someone is a bit pretentious. What would you say about this person?
- Your friend is blushing because they are a bit embarrassed. What might you say to them?
- In a shop, your friend rejects the idea of a sheepskin jacket. How do you explain this to the assistant?
- The shop assistant tells you the jacket is a sale bargain. What does the shop assistant say?
- At an outdoor market, you tell your friend to haggle. How do you say this?
- A stallholder tells you his prices can't be beaten. What does he say?

À L'ACTION !



Watch the video of two young people buying clothes. Then bring in various items of clothing, and in groups act out a scenario or make a film clip about one or two customers buying clothes and bargaining in a market.

OR
Draw a cartoon in which young people are buying clothes in a *marché aux puces* and bargaining. You may like to make a multimedia presentation of your cartoon with voice-over. You can work alone or in a small group.



Look at the map and bar graphs below. They show that although Australia is much bigger than France in area, it is much smaller in terms of population.

FIND OUT MORE

Compare the population density of France and Australia; that is, the number of people per square kilometre. France is not a densely populated country compared to other European countries. Compare the population density of France with that of the Netherlands.



France's surface area = 547 026 km²



Australia's surface area = 7 682 300 km²



France's population (2016) = 65 000 000



Australia's population (2016) = 24 600 000

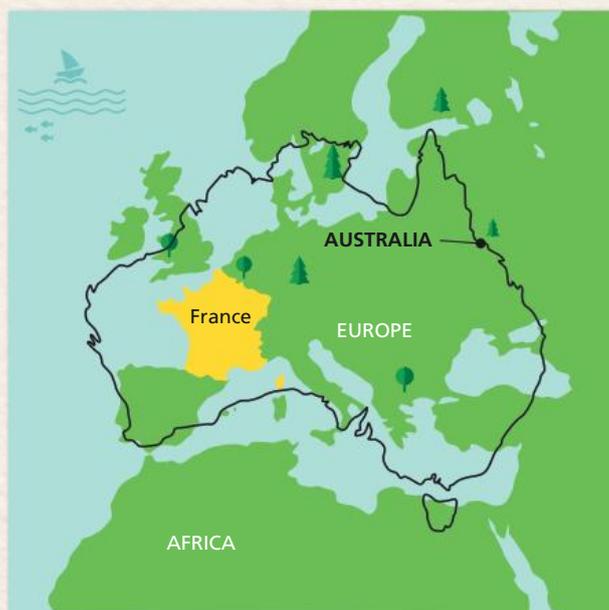
Transport in France and Australia

Big cities in France and Australia have similar public transport systems: underground trains, trains, light rail, trams, buses and ferries. In general, the French transport networks are better developed, more reliable and cheaper than in Australia. But they are also more crowded, particularly in Paris.

Inter-city travel is another story. Look at the comparative distances in the tables on the right. They are average distances by road or rail.

In Australia, it can take several days to cover the vast distances between major cities by car: Sydney to Melbourne – one day, Sydney to Perth – 4 to 5 days. By train, it is much the same – the Indian Pacific from Sydney to Perth takes 65 hours (4 days and 3 nights). So most people choose to fly between our major cities. In France, the distances are shorter. The roads are good, and motorways link all the major cities. However, most of them are toll roads. From Paris to Marseilles the toll is 60 euros or more. The trip will take you about 7 hours.

If you take the fast train, the TGV (*train à grande vitesse*), which travels at up to 300 kilometres per hour, you can get to Marseilles from Paris in 3 or 4 hours (depending on how many times it stops). You can fly to Marseilles in a little over an hour, but the airports are up to 30 kilometres from the centre of the towns and if you add baggage check-in and security checks, it's not much faster than the train. And you don't see much from a plane!



AUSTRALIA

Sydney – Perth	4100 km
Adelaide – Darwin	3042 km
Melbourne – Brisbane	1660 km

FRANCE

Paris – Nice	900 km
Paris – Toulouse	680 km
Paris – Marseilles	660 km

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

If you were travelling from Paris to Marseilles, which type of transport would you choose?

This is the Eurostar, which travels from Paris to London via the Channel Tunnel. It carries up to 1000 passengers and has a maximum speed of 320 kilometres per hour. Why take a plane?



Alamy Stock Photo/Richard Cooke

Taking the train from Paris

France has a comprehensive rail network, with Paris at its centre. Most large Australian cities have just one or two central stations. Paris has six, and depending on where you want to go, you have to choose the correct station. They are easy to get to because they are all linked to the metro.

Paris central stations

Gare du Nord: northern region
(e.g. Lille, United Kingdom via Channel Tunnel, Belgium, the Netherlands, northern Germany)

Gare Saint-Lazare: north-western region
(e.g. Normandy)

Gare de l'Est: eastern region
(e.g. Strasbourg, Germany)

Gare de Lyon: south-eastern region
(e.g. Lyons, Switzerland, Italy)

Gare Montparnasse: western and south-western regions
(e.g. Brittany, Bordeaux, Spain)

Gare d'Austerlitz: southern region
(e.g. Toulouse, Spain)

ENQUÊTE

Imagine you are planning a trip to France. Find out how you would travel there and get about once you are there. Which French airline could you take? Which French airlines (if any) fly to Australia? Where would you land in France? How would you get from the airport to Paris? In Paris, what are the RATP, the RER and the SNCF networks? Look at the maps of these networks. Choose several places to visit in Paris and find out which metro station is closest to each. How would you get to the Palace of Versailles? How would you get to the chateaux of the Loire or any other place you would like to visit? How would you get to London from Paris?

Draw two maps, one of your itinerary in Paris and one of your itinerary in France.

Bonjour Toulouse !

In this unit you will learn how to:

- identify places in a French town (such as banks, shops and public buildings)
- ask for and give directions about how to get to places
- say where places are in relation to each other.

You will also learn about:

- the range of shops and public buildings (such as the town hall and post office) in French towns and cities
- community and transport facilities, religious services and emergency services in France, the city of Toulouse and other centres in south-west France.

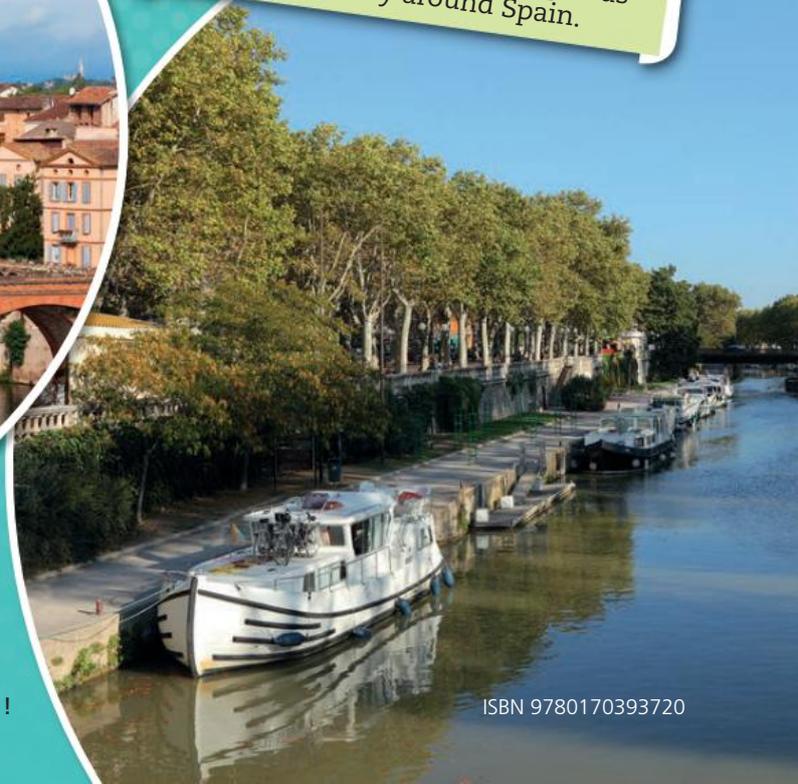


The historic *place du Capitole* (Capitol Square), the centre of Toulouse. In summer there are a large number of outdoor cafés and restaurants in the square.



Le *pont Vieux* (Old Bridge) in the town of Albi. The bridge was built in the 11th century and is still in use today.

Le *canal du Midi* in Narbonne. The canal was built to allow trade between the Atlantic coast and the Mediterranean, thus avoiding a long and dangerous ocean journey around Spain.



Le Capitole (town hall) on the place du Capitole. The building also houses a theatre/opera house.



Alamy Stock Photo/Jan G Dignell

istock.com/Leand Ambrose

La basilique Saint-Sernin in Toulouse. The basilica is dedicated to the memory of the first bishop of Toulouse, Saint Sernin, martyred by the Romans near here in 250 ce.



Alamy Stock Photo/age fotostock

A view of the Airbus A380 assembly factory in Blagnac, a suburb of Toulouse. The Airbus facilities also house Aéroscopia, an aeronautical museum.



istock.com/Philip Lange



Marius



Clara



Sophie

À la découverte de Toulouse

Mr Harvey is in Toulouse on business because he works with Airbus. He has brought along Sophie and Clara, neither of whom has been to Toulouse.

1



Marius Bonjour ! Je peux vous aider ?

Clara Nous cherchons la cathédrale Saint-Sernin.

Marius La basilique Saint-Sernin. Oui, c'est pas loin.

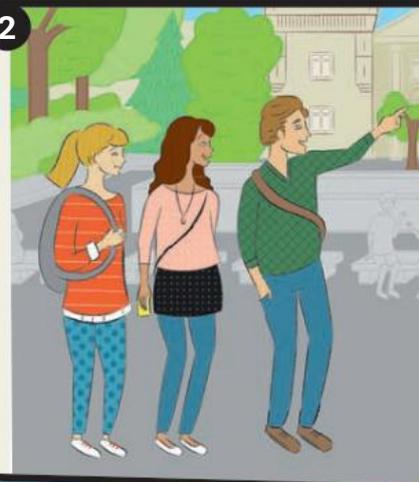
2

Sophie On peut y aller à pied ?

Marius Oui, bien sûr. Vous pouvez visiter tout le centre de Toulouse à pied.

Clara Ah, c'est bien ça. Surtout qu'il fait beau aujourd'hui.

Marius Alors, cette rue-là, c'est la rue La Fayette. Vous allez à gauche. Puis vous tournez à droite dans la rue du Taur. Vous passez devant l'église Notre-Dame du Taur sur votre droite. Vous continuez tout droit et la basilique Saint-Sernin est devant vous sur la place Saint-Sernin.



3



Clara Merci. Et pour faire du shopping ? Il y a un centre commercial par ici ?

Marius Pour le shopping, vous allez à l'Espace Saint-Georges. C'est un peu plus compliqué à pied, alors il faut prendre le métro. La station Capitole, c'est là-bas. Vous changez à Jean-Jaurès et vous descendez à François Verdier.

4



Sophie Merci encore.

Marius De rien. On se présente ? Moi, je m'appelle Marius. Vous êtes de Paris ?

Clara Oui. Moi, je m'appelle Clara. Et Sophie, c'est une amie australienne. Son père travaille chez Airbus Industrie.

5



Marius Alors, ça vous plaît, Toulouse ?

Sophie Oui, beaucoup. C'est une très belle ville.

Marius Malheureusement, il y a peu de touristes étrangers qui viennent ici. Ils préfèrent aller à Paris.

Sophie Eh bien, moi, je vais dire à tous mes amis en Australie de venir ici !

Marius Les Australiens sont tous les bienvenus à Toulouse ! Je vous souhaite un bon séjour. Un conseil : choisissez bien les endroits que vous voulez visiter, il y en a beaucoup ! Et n'oubliez pas la Cité de l'espace.

6



Sophie Il est gentil, ce garçon, non ?

Clara Oui. Et beau, en plus...

Sophie Tu trouves ?

Clara Oui, mais peu importe. On ne va pas le revoir.

Sophie Mmm... on ne sait jamais.



EN FRANCE

In Toulouse, le *Capitole* is the name for the town hall (*l'hôtel de ville*). The name and parts of the building date back to the 12th century, but most of the current building was constructed in the 18th century.

Marius politely corrects Clara when she refers to Saint-Sernin as *une cathédrale*; it is *une basilique*. The difference is that a basilica is a church or cathedral where an important historical event took place. In this case, it is the killing of the first bishop of Toulouse, Saint-Sernin, by the Romans in 250 ce.



Où se trouve le musée Toulouse-Lautrec ?

During the weekend, Mr Harvey takes Sophie and Clara on a day trip to Albi, hometown of the famous artist Toulouse-Lautrec. They are going to the Toulouse-Lautrec Museum. On the way, they run into the young student they met in Toulouse, Marius.



1

Sophie On y va ?
Mr Harvey Attends. Je finis mon caf .
Sophie Tu as ton portable ?

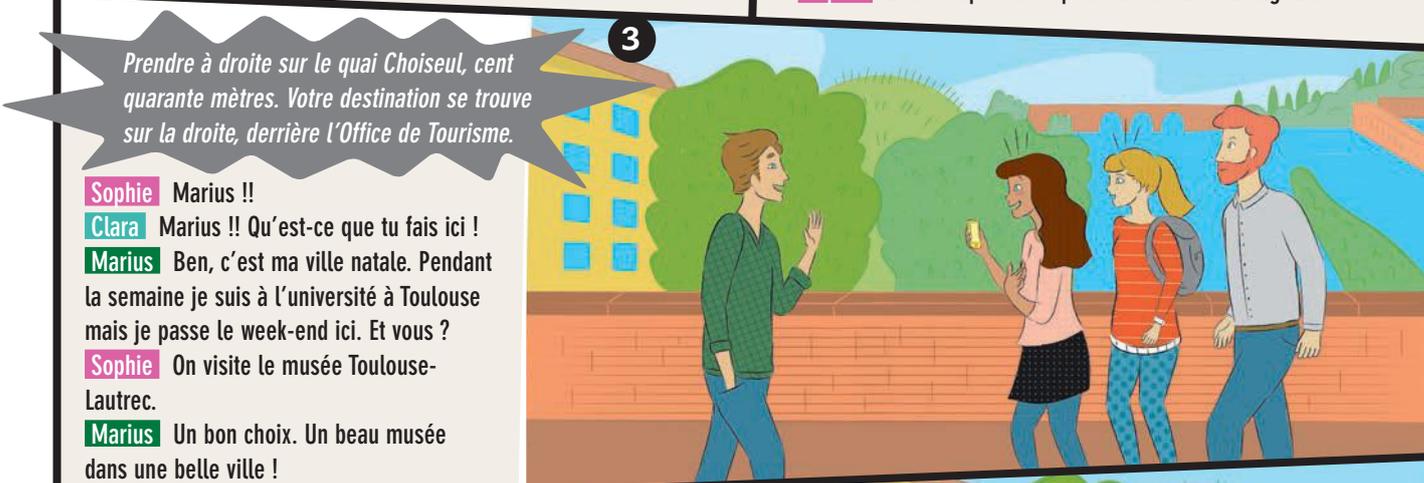
Mr Harvey Oui. Mais je ne réussis jamais à utiliser le GPS.
Clara Ça va. J'ai les directions.
Sophie C'est tout près, à cinq cents mètres.



2

Prendre la direction sud-est vers le pont Vieux, deux cents mètres.

Clara C'est facile. Et on va prendre de belles photos sur le pont.
Sophie Et des clips vidéos pour Facebook et Instagram.



3

Prendre à droite sur le quai Choiseul, cent quarante mètres. Votre destination se trouve sur la droite, derrière l'Office de Tourisme.

Sophie Marius !!
Clara Marius !! Qu'est-ce que tu fais ici !
Marius Ben, c'est ma ville natale. Pendant la semaine je suis à l'université à Toulouse mais je passe le week-end ici. Et vous ?
Sophie On visite le musée Toulouse-Lautrec.
Marius Un bon choix. Un beau musée dans une belle ville !



4

Sophie Quelle surprise de te rencontrer ici, Marius !
Clara Tu ne veux pas déjeuner au café avec nous tout à l'heure ?
Marius Je suis désolé, ce n'est pas possible – j'ai rendez-vous avec ma fiancé .
Clara Ah, d'accord... Eh bien, au revoir.
Marius Au revoir, et bonne journée !



5

Mr Harvey Qui c'est, ce jeune homme ? Un ami ?
Clara Non, non... un étudiant... d'ici... qui connaît bien Toulouse et Albi...
Sophie Et qui aime sa ville natale. Alors, allons au musée !

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues in sections.

FIND OUT MORE

Henri de Toulouse-Lautrec was born in Albi. He was an aristocrat, a descendant of the Counts of Toulouse. Why is he famous and why is there a museum that bears his name?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Identifying places in a French town



A Nous cherchons la cathédrale Saint-Sernin.

B Oui, ce n'est pas loin. Regardez...

A Il y a un centre commercial par ici ?
On peut y aller à pied ?

B Oui, vous pouvez visiter tout le centre
de la ville à pied.

2 Asking for and giving directions to a place



A Où se trouve la basilique ?



B Prenez la rue La Fayette.
C'est la rue là-bas.

B Vous tournez à gauche.
Puis vous tournez à droite.

B Vous passez devant l'église.

B Vous continuez tout droit.
La basilique est devant vous.

3 Saying where places are in relation to each other



Votre destination se trouve sur la droite, derrière l'Office de Tourisme.

La basilique Saint-Sernin est devant vous sur la place Saint-Sernin.

4 Giving directions about how to get to places



C'est un peu plus compliqué à pied.

Il faut prendre le métro.

Vous changez à Jean-Jaurès et vous descendez à François Verdier.

Vous prenez la **première**
deuxième
troisième rue à droite.



5 Giving advice and good wishes to visitors



Je vous souhaite un bon séjour.

N'oubliez pas de visiter la Cité de l'espace.

Pardon, madame, il y a une banque par ici ?

Oui, vous allez tout droit, puis vous prenez la première rue à gauche. La banque est sur votre droite. C'est tout près.

Merci, madame.



Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

11.1



Il y a une banque par ici ? Work in pairs for this role-play. Imagine you are a tourist asking for directions to places in a French town. Your partner plays the role of a local and directs you to the places you want to go to.

11.2



Pardon, où est... ? Work with a partner. You both have maps of a *quartier*. Some places are missing on your maps and you want to know how to get to them. Ask each other how to get to the missing places and write the names in the blank spaces on the map.



Ça se trouve où ?

EN PLUS !

Here is a French street sign often seen in public places.



REFLECT AND CREATE

Find out what these street signs are signalling and draw a specific icon to accompany each sign to indicate this.

- Défense de fumer
- Route barrée
- Attention au feu
- Chiens tenus en laisse
- Interdit aux vélos
- Ne pas jeter des ordures
- Ne faites pas de camping sauvage



Alamy Stock Photo/Justin Kase zlive

Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer *i*



The French *i* sound is similar to the English 'ee' sound, as in 'see'. However, you need to spread your lips and make an effort, as if you are frightened and saying 'eek!' Listen to the recording.

midi

ici

y

qui

si

oui

2 Comment prononcer *ill, ille et il*



The letters *ill, ille* and *il* (at the end of a word) are normally pronounced like the 'y' in 'yes'. Listen to the recording.

fille

famille

travail

réveiller

pavillon

However, there are some important exceptions, where they are pronounced as 'l':

mille

ville

village

tranquille

3 Comment prononcer *ch*



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words:

chinois

chambre

chat

riche

chercher

coucher

The letters *ch* in French are in most cases pronounced like 'sh' in English.

In some cases, generally when *ch* is followed by a consonant, *ch* is pronounced 'k', as it is in English. For example: *chronologie, chrome, technologie*.

The English 'ch' sound (*chin, achieve*) is rarely heard in French. It only occurs in borrowed words and is spelt *tch*:

match

Tchin-tchin !

Tchao ! (Ciao!)



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

There are borrowed sounds in French such as *tch* but there are also 'borrowed' letters. Most French words beginning with 'w' are borrowed from other languages, mainly English. However, they are not always pronounced the same way; for example, *wagon* is pronounced *vagon*. Most other borrowings are pronounced as in English: *wallaby, western, week-end, watt ...*

Grammaire

1a Les verbes réguliers en *-ir*

Rappel : You have already seen and used examples from the first conjugation of regular verbs in French ending in *-er*, such as *parler*, *travailler* and *regarder*.

There is a second conjugation of regular verbs in French ending in *-ir*. Take the *-ir* off the infinitive and add the verb endings as indicated.

finir (to finish)	
je fi is	nous fi issons
tu fi is	vous fi issez
il / elle / on fi it	ils / elles fi issent

Some other commonly used verbs in this group are *choisir* (to choose), *grandir* (to grow), *obéir* (to obey), *punir* (to punish) and *réussir* (to succeed).

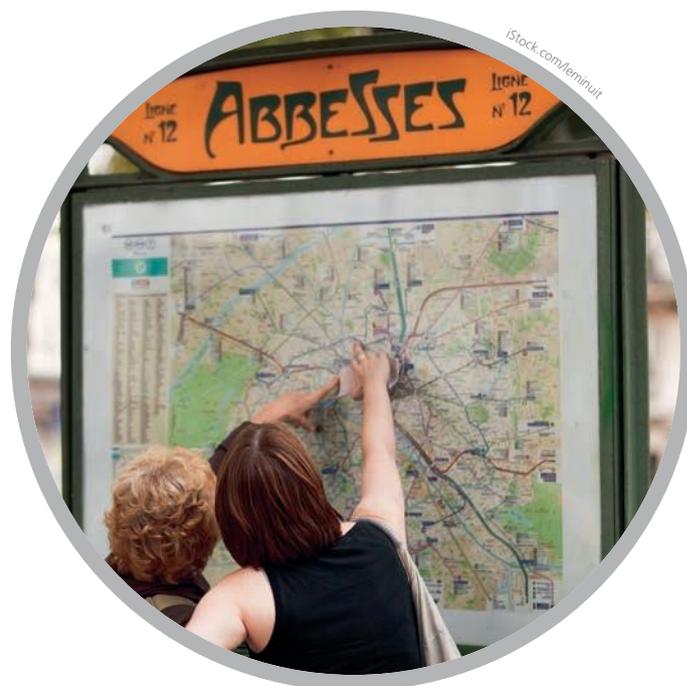
Choisissez bien votre itinéraire de voyage !

choisir (to choose)	
je chois is	nous chois issons
tu chois is	vous chois issez
il / elle / on chois it	ils / elles chois issent

grandir (to grow)	
je grand is	nous grand issons
tu grand is	vous grand issez
il / elle / on grand it	ils / elles grand issent

Tu **réussis** bien ton travail. Bravo !

réussir (to succeed)	
je réuss is	nous réuss issons
tu réuss is	vous réuss issez
il / elle / on réuss it	ils / elles réuss issent



WHAT DO YOU THINK?

What letters are in the plural forms of the verb *finir* and not in the singular forms?

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

In French, most colours can be turned into verbs that mean something has changed to that colour; for example, *rougir* (to turn red), *blanchir* (to turn white), *noircir* (to turn black), *jaunir* (to turn yellow), *verdier* (to turn green) and *bleuir* (to turn blue). All of these are regular *-ir* verbs and so they take the conjugation you have seen above.

In English, can we turn a colour into a verb?

1b Les verbes irréguliers en *-ir*

There are some French verbs ending in *-ir* that do not take the same verb forms as on the previous page. Two examples of these are *partir* and *sortir*.

The verb *partir* is used to express the idea of leaving a place, or setting off on a trip.

Nous **partons** demain pour faire la tour de France.

On **part** en vacances au mois de janvier.

partir (to leave)

je pars	nous partons
tu pars	vous partez
il / elle / on part	ils / elles partent

The verb *sortir* is used to express the idea of going out of a room or leaving a place.

Je **sors** du café et je vais à l'arrêt du bus.

Nous **sortons** du collège vers midi.

sortir (to leave, to go out)

je sors	nous sortons
tu sors	vous sortez
il / elle / on sort	ils / elles sortent

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

The verbs *partir* and *sortir* both express the idea of leaving. How do you know which one to use? Give examples to show this.

Can you explain the different meanings of *sortir* in the two sentences below?

- *Paul sort pour acheter du pain.*
- *Paul sort avec Mireille. Il l'aime beaucoup.*



Les étudiants sortent du lycée Pierre-de-Fermat à Toulouse.

Qu'est-ce qu'on trouve dans le quartier ?

In France, a *quartier* can mean a neighbourhood in a large city or the centre of a small town or village. In most *quartiers* you will find:

- a range of shops – *une boulangerie, une boucherie, une épicerie, un supermarché, une pharmacie*. There will almost certainly be a farmer's market (*place du marché*), many of which have existed for hundreds of years
- services – *une banque, un bureau de poste, un commissariat de police, une caserne de pompiers, un hôpital or une clinique, une mairie*
- community facilities – *un stade, une piscine* and, often, *une Maison des Jeunes et de la Culture*, which is a recreation and cultural centre for young people
- educational buildings – *une école maternelle, une école primaire, un collège, un lycée* and perhaps *une université*
- religious services – *une église*, the spire of which often marks the town centre.

Suivez les instructions

À tous les étudiants de la classe –
vous êtes invités chez moi !

Pourquoi ?

Pour fêter mon anniversaire !

Quand ?

le samedi 20 juin, à partir de 19 heures

Où ?

Chez moi ! 22 rue de la Pomme (Carrière de la Poma d'Aur pour ceux qui parlent Occitan)

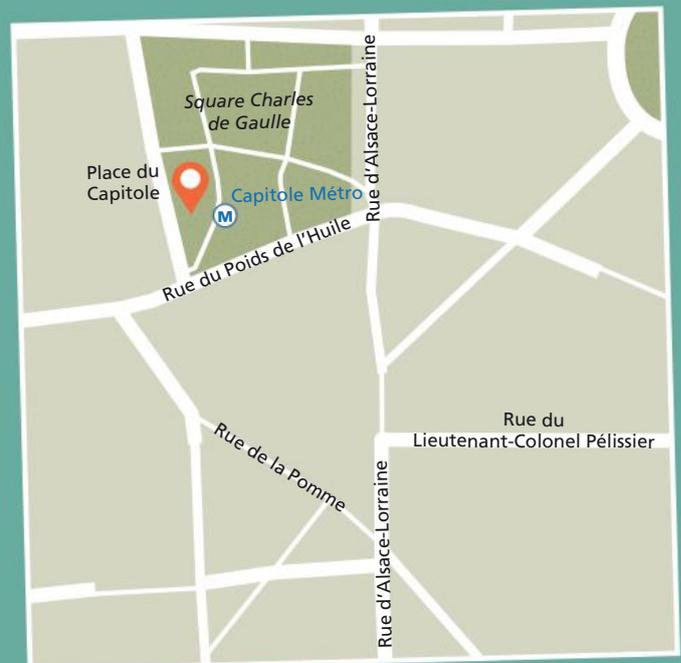
Mais comment aller chez moi ?

C'est dans le centre-ville et ce n'est pas compliqué parce que c'est près de la place du Capitole. Le plus pratique, c'est de prendre le métro. Vous descendez à la station Capitole, sortie square Charles de Gaulle, en face de la rue du Poids de l'Huile (c'est un sens unique). Vous tournez à gauche dans cette rue et puis à droite dans la rue d'Alsace-Lorraine. Vous continuez tout droit et vous passez la rue du Lieutenant-Colonel Pélissier. (Qui est-ce ? Je ne sais pas.) Un peu plus loin, vous allez voir la rue de la Pomme sur la droite. Prenez la rue de la Pomme, et notre appartement, c'est le 22, au deuxième étage.

Si vos parents vous emmènent en voiture, ils peuvent vous déposer au square Charles de Gaulle – il est très difficile de passer par la rue de la Pomme, c'est très étroit et il y a beaucoup de monde.

À samedi !

Sage ... bientôt 16 ans !





Toulouse

Toulouse (*Tolosa* in Occitan), with a population of 1 250 000, is the fourth largest city in France, after Paris, Lyons and Marseilles. It lies on the Garonne River in the south-west of France. Toulouse is known as *la Ville Rose* (the Pink City) because many of its main buildings are made of pinkish terracotta bricks.

Toulouse is the centre of the European aerospace industry, which includes the headquarters of Airbus plane manufacturing and the Toulouse Space Centre, Europe's largest centre for research and development relating to space travel. *La Cité de l'espace* (Space City) is a theme park dedicated to space travel.

The city of Toulouse has a long history. Under the Roman occupation of Gaul, *Tolosas* (as it was known) became a major city because of its favourable position between the Mediterranean Sea and the Atlantic Ocean. The Roman amphitheatre, where gladiators fought, still exists today although it has now been partly rebuilt as a *lycée technique*.

In 250 CE, the bishop of Toulouse was martyred. He was sentenced under Roman law to have his feet tied to a wild bull and dragged along stone steps by the animal. His death was commemorated in the 11th century by the huge basilica of Saint-Sernin, the largest Romanesque building in the world. It is now an important stopover on the well-known Catholic pilgrimage route to Santiago de Compostela in Spain.

Shutterstock.com/Pecold



The streets in the centre of Toulouse have signs in two languages, first French and then Occitan, the traditional language of southern France. Few people in Toulouse speak Occitan. However, there are Occitan libraries, Occitan classes in schools and, since 2009, bilingual announcements (French and Occitan) are made in the Toulouse metro.



Photomontop/Jacques Loïc

FIND OUT MORE

In your country, have languages been repressed (to the point of disappearance perhaps)? Do you know of other countries where this has happened?

Le Canal du Midi

You might know about the Suez and Panama canals, which cut ocean travel by many thousands of kilometres. A similar canal was built in France in the 17th century. This is the Canal du Midi, which starts in Toulouse and links the Atlantic Ocean via the Garonne River to the Mediterranean Sea. It was built to transport wheat and wine safely to the Mediterranean near Montpellier, a journey of about 500 kilometres, instead of crossing the dangerous Bay of Biscay and sailing around Spain. The canal is now a UNESCO World Heritage site and is no longer used for trade but is still used for pleasure cruises.





EN FRANCE

If you want to learn French in France, you can find language centres in all the big cities, including Toulouse. One of the best-known cities for studying French is Montpellier in the Languedoc-Roussillon region on the Mediterranean coast.

APPRENEZ LE FRANÇAIS EN FRANCE !



L'école France-Accueil propose aux étudiants étrangers une gamme complète de cours de langue intensifs à Montpellier : la ville où le soleil ne se couche jamais.

- La première destination pour apprendre le français en France après Paris !
- Ville numéro 1 dans le concours « meilleure qualité de vie en France »
- 300 jours de soleil par an !!
- 400 000 habitants (dont 80 000 étudiants)
- Une ville jeune : 40 pour cent des habitants ont moins de 30 ans
- Située à seulement 15 minutes des belles plages de la Méditerranée

Cours de français

France-Accueil vous propose :

- des cours de français général (débutant, moyen, avancé)
- des cours de français + programme culture
- des cours de français spécialisé (cuisine ou hôtellerie).

Hébergement

France-Accueil vous propose plusieurs types d'hébergements :

- chez l'habitant : demi-pension (petit déjeuner + dîner)
- chez l'habitant : chambre + accès à la cuisine
- studio indépendant.

Activités extrascolaires

Des excursions pour découvrir la ville et la région

Les week-ends, venez découvrir les plus beaux endroits du sud de la France : Nîmes et ses arènes romaines, Carcassonne – cité fortifiée, Avignon (« sur le pont d'Avignon on y danse »), Marseille (visitez le Vieux Port et le Château d'If).



Les ateliers culturels

Apprenez le français en faisant du théâtre, en faisant de la cuisine, en chantant, en dansant... bref, en vous amusant !

... et des activités sportives

Apprenez à jouer à la pétanque comme un pro, ou jouez au beach-volley sur le sable fin des plages méditerranéennes !

Toulouse (Old Town) was built from terracotta bricks, which gave it the name *Toulouse la Rose* or *la Ville Rose*. There is a special atmosphere when walking through its narrow pedestrian streets leading to the Capitole or along the banks of the Garonne.

Find out more about the origins of Toulouse. What are some of the remarkable old buildings and places in the town centre? How does the history of Toulouse compare with the history of your town or city? Can you find older pictures of how your town used to look years ago?

Draw a map of the central part of your town. How are the streets laid out, and how does the layout compare with the angles of the streets in central Toulouse? How do you explain the differences? Compare the street names in your town with those of Toulouse. What do street names in a town tell us about the history of the place?

VOCABULAIRE

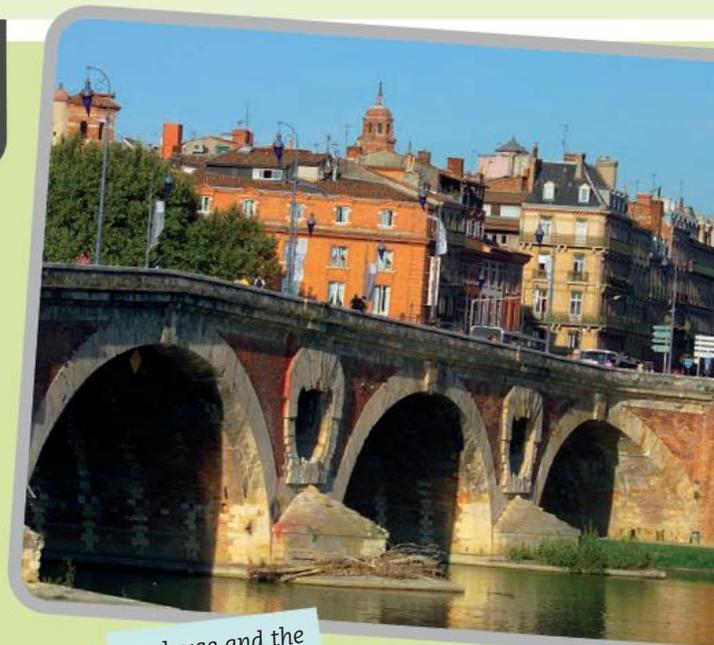


Town places to see

la basilique	basilica
la cathédrale	cathedral
l'église (f)	church
le centre commercial	commercial centre
le métro	metro, underground train
l'hôtel (m) de ville	town hall
le bureau de poste	post office
la banque	bank
le centre-ville	town centre
le musée	museum
l'Office (m) de Tourisme	tourist office
le commissariat de police	police station

Positions of places

en face de	opposite
devant vous	in front of you
derrière vous	behind you
tout droit	straight ahead
à gauche	to the left
à droite	to the right
à côté de	beside
à l'angle de	at the corner of
là-bas	over there
loin de	far from
près de	near to
sens unique	one-way



Toulouse and the Garonne River

Imagefolk.com/Alan Copson

Travelling expressions

changer de métro	to change trains
descendre du métro	to get off the train
à pied	on foot
Où se trouve... ?	Where is ...?
emmener en voiture	to take (someone) by car
déposer quelqu'un	to drop (someone) off

Useful verbs

aider	to help
choisir	to choose
venir	to come
revoir	to see again
trouver	to find

Les grandes vacances

In this unit you will learn how to:

- talk about holiday plans
- talk about the weather
- express physical feelings (such as feeling cold or hungry).

You will also learn about:

- holidays in France, and where to stay
- when and where French people take holidays
- Paris Plages.



A tollway near Aix-en-Provence in the south of France. Péage means you have to pay. The letter 'A' means autoroute (freeway); 'E' means the road leads to another country, in this case Spain (Barcelona) via Nîmes, and Italy via Marseilles.

Paris Plages beside the Seine. You are not allowed to swim in the river!





Alamy Stock Photo/Anna Picture Library

Summer holidays: caravans and tents at a busy campsite among sand dunes on the north coast of France

Alamy Stock Photo/Anna



La Grande Plage (the main beach) in Biarritz on the Atlantic coast in the Basque country. France's best surfing beaches are in this part of France.

Alamy Stock Photo/Anna



Alamy Stock Photo/Didier ZYLBEFVNG

Hikers in the Hautes Pyrénées (High Pyrenees) near the Spanish border. They are following GR10, un chemin de grande randonnée (a major hiking trail). These well-marked trails are found all over France.



Sailing boats in the harbour at La Rochelle, a coastal town in south-western France



Nathan



Clara



Yassine



Sophie

Des projets de vacances

It's June, and Nathan, Sophie, Clara and Yassine are at school, unhappy that they have to study for exams while outside it is warm and sunny. While they wait for the next exam, they discuss their holiday plans.

1

Nathan Il fait beau aujourd'hui. Et chaud.
Clara Oui. Mais nous, on travaille au lieu de s'amuser.
Yassine Des contrôles, des contrôles, des contrôles...
Nathan Il y en a marre !
Sophie C'est la même chose pour les élèves en Australie. La seule différence, c'est que là-bas les contrôles sont en novembre.

2

Clara C'est bientôt les grandes vacances. Vous avez des projets ?
Yassine Moi, je travaille.
Sophie Ah bon ? Où ça ?
Yassine À Paris Plages. Mon père a une buvette. Il vend des boissons et des petits plats marocains.

Clara Et toi, Nathan ?
Nathan D'abord, je vais aider Yassine et son père. Et puis j'espère faire une randonnée dans les Vosges. Avec le Club des Randonneurs du lycée.

3

Yassine Et toi, Sophie, tu rentres en Australie ?
Sophie Non, mon père travaille ici tout l'été. Alors, maman, Liam et moi, on va faire du surf à Biarritz et puis une promenade en bateau sur le Canal du Midi.

Yassine Et la côte d'Azur ?
Sophie Non, on dit qu'il y a trop de monde en été.
Nathan Ça, c'est vrai ! Et en plus, c'est cher.

4

Yassine Et toi, Clara ?
Clara En juillet, je vais rendre visite à papi et mamie dans leur ferme. J'espère qu'il va faire beau.
Nathan Bonne chance. On ne sait jamais en Normandie.

Clara Et puis, je vais faire un stage de voile à La Rochelle.
Yassine Tu pars toute seule ?
Clara Bien sûr que non ! Avec un groupe de la Maison des Jeunes de Belleville.

5

Nathan Eh bien, allons-y. C'est le contrôle de maths, non ?
Sophie Mais non ! C'est le contrôle d'anglais.
Nathan Vraiment ? Oh là là ! Je ne suis pas préparé !
Clara Tu n'es jamais préparé !
Yassine *My favourite subject ! Let's go !*

Paris Plages

Yassine and Nathan are working at M. Benjelloun's food and drink stall at Paris Plages. A young Swiss couple ask for directions and are given sound advice after they buy a snack.



Nathan



Yassine



M. Benjelloun



Jeune femme



Jeune homme

1



Nathan Il n'y a pas beaucoup de monde aujourd'hui.
Yassine Non, le ciel est couvert. Ce n'est pas une journée pour se faire bronzer.
M. Benjelloun Mais pour se reposer ou jouer au beach-volley, c'est parfait. Nous avons beaucoup de clients quand même.

2



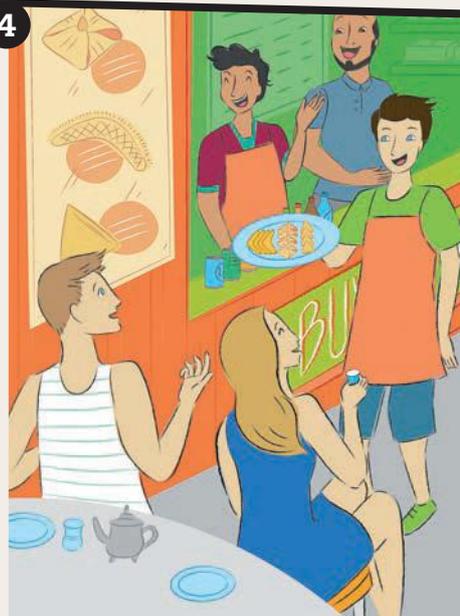
Jeune femme Pardon. Il y a une piscine ici ?
M. Benjelloun Non, malheureusement.
Jeune homme Donc, on peut se baigner dans le fleuve ?
M. Benjelloun Dans la Seine ? Oh non ! C'est strictement interdit !
Jeune femme Mais c'est une plage... ?
Yassine Oui, regardez le sable et les parasols et les chaises longues. C'est une plage pour se reposer et se faire bronzer près de l'eau.
Nathan Mais pas dans l'eau.

3



M. Benjelloun Asseyez-vous ! Vous avez faim ? Vous avez soif ?
Jeune homme Un peu, mais...
M. Benjelloun Je vous propose un thé à la menthe et une assiette de pâtisseries marocaines.
Jeune femme Oui, je veux bien. Je ne connais pas les pâtisseries marocaines.
Yassine Vous n'êtes pas d'ici ?
Jeune homme Non, nous sommes suisses. On n'a pas beaucoup de plages chez nous.

4



Nathan Vous cherchez des activités aquatiques ?
Jeune homme Oui. C'est pourquoi nous sommes ici. « Paris Plages ».
Nathan Alors, il faut aller au Bassin de la Villette. C'est le deuxième « Paris Plages » et c'est plus loin.
Jeune femme Et qu'est-ce qu'on fait là-bas ?
Nathan Il y a toutes sortes d'activités nautiques : du kayak, de la voile, du pédalo.
Jeune homme Et on peut se baigner ?
Yassine Si vous tombez dans l'eau, oui !!!



EN FRANCE

Some French people do not go on holidays in summer. To give these people a beach experience, the Paris *mairie* (city council) created **Paris Plages**. For a month, along the banks of the Seine, traffic is redirected and the river banks are transformed into sandy beaches, where people can relax in rented hammocks and beach chairs, play sport such as pétanque or volleyball, or take classes in tai chi. You can even borrow library books from the *camion bibliothèque* (library van)!

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

Practise the exchanges in the *Situations* using the audio recordings as a model. Then work in groups and role-play the dialogues in sections.

FIND OUT MORE

Do you know of other places where an artificial environment has been created? This might, for instance, be a beach far from the sea or a winter sports environment in a hot country. What do you think of these places?

FAÇONS DE PARLER

1 Asking about holiday plans



Où ?

A Où est-ce que tu vas passer les vacances ?

B Je vais passer les vacances...
... dans mon pays / chez moi.
... à l'étranger.

B Je vais aller...



... au bord de la mer.



... à la campagne.



... à la montagne.

Comment ?

A Comment est-ce que tu vas y aller ?

B Je prends...

... l'avion.



... le train.



... la voiture.



Combien de temps ?

A Tu vas passer combien de temps en vacances ?

B Je vais passer...
... huit jours.
... quinze jours.
... tout le mois en vacances.

Pour quoi faire ?

A Quelles activités est-ce que tu penses faire en vacances ?

B Je vais faire...
... des randonnées dans la nature.
... du camping.
... de la planche à voile.
... du ski.
... du surf.

2 Things to take on holiday



A Qu'est-ce que tu vas prendre avec toi ?

B Je vais prendre...
... un portable et un chargeur.
... un sac à dos / une valise.
... de l'argent / ma carte bancaire.



Je vais prendre un sac à dos.

3 Talking about the weather



A Quel temps fait-il ?

B Il fait beau temps.

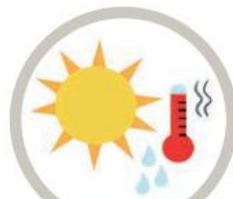
B Il fait mauvais temps.



Il ne pleut pas.



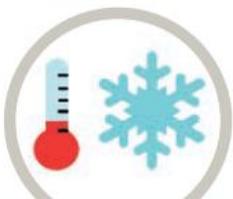
Il y a beaucoup de soleil.



Il fait chaud.



Il y a de la neige.



Il fait froid.



Il y a du vent.

LET'S COMMUNICATE IN FRENCH

12.1 **Nous allons partir en vacances** Working in groups of four, take turns asking each other about proposed holidays.

12.2 **Quel temps fait-il à... ?** Working in groups, conduct online research to prepare weather reports on various Francophone cities around the world.

12 **Les vacances... chez toi**

Let's master the key structures. Work in pairs or groups to practise these structures after listening to the audio recordings.

EN PLUS !

Look at these expressions about travelling and weather. Use the text in brackets to work out their meaning.

- lever l'ancre (partir)
- se faire la malle (partir)
- mener quelqu'un en bateau (tromper ou duper quelqu'un)
- faire un froid de canard (faire très froid)
- parler de la pluie et du beau temps (parler de tout et de rien)

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Translate the expressions on the left into English. Do the English expressions work in the same way as the French ones?

Phonétique et graphie

1 Comment prononcer *ui*



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words. Pay attention to the letters in red:

nuit

puis

aujourd'hui

lui

produit

bruit

The letters *ui* sound a little like *oui*. However, the first sound in *oui* is *ou*, whereas the first sound in *ui* is *u*. (See *Unité 9* for the difference between *ou* and *u*.) Listen to the difference here:

Louis

lui

To pronounce *ui*, you need to round your lips and push your tongue forward as if you were pronouncing *u*, then spread your lips to end with *i*. This is quite tricky, because the *u* is not fully pronounced – technically it is a semi-vowel and runs into the *i*.

Now try to imitate the sound. If your lip muscles hurt a bit, you are probably doing it right!

2 Comment prononcer *gn*



Listen to the pronunciation of the following words:

montagne

gagne

ligne

signe

ignorant

The *gn* combination in French is pronounced like the 'ni' in the English word 'onion'.

Grammaire

1 Le verbe au présent + l'infini

Rappel : As we saw in *Unités 5* and *10*, when two verbs are used together in a sentence, the second verb takes the form of the infinitive:

J'aime manger des biscottes.

Tu aimes boire du jus d'orange ?

Je voudrais acheter des chaussures.

Tu voudrais essayer ce blouson ?

Other expressions also use the structure of a present tense verb plus the infinitive:

J'espère faire des randonnées dans les Vosges.

Tu penses faire des activités nautiques ?

Il faut...

Il faut means 'It is necessary to ...'. It is followed by the infinitive in most cases.

Il faut aller au Bassin de la Villette.

Il ne faut pas arriver trop tard.

Il faut prendre le métro.

Il faut choisir un bon hôtel.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Can you think of other ways of translating *il faut* into English?

2 Le futur proche



A common way of talking about the immediate future in French is to use the verb *aller* (to go) as we do in English (e.g. 'I'm going to ...'). The 'go' form in French is followed by the infinitive of the relevant verb.

- On **va faire** du surf à Biarritz.
- Je **vais inviter** tout le monde.
- Tu **vas acheter** des billets ?
- Elle **va faire** du vélo.
- Je **ne vais pas partir** en voyage.
- Je **vais faire** un stage de voile à La Rochelle.
- Nous **allons partir** bientôt.
- Vous **allez être** fatigué(es).
- Ils **vont jouer** au foot.
- On **ne va pas aller** à la plage.

Faire du surf à Biarritz



Alamy Stock Photo/Vova Pomortzeff



LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

Nous allons partir demain.
This sentence expresses a future intention. How many ways can this be expressed in English?

Faire de la voile à La Rochelle



Shutterstock.com/Peter Timmus

3a Le verbe *faire* (décrire le temps)

To talk about the weather in French we use the verb *faire* in the impersonal form, *il fait*.

To talk about weather in the present:

A Quel temps fait-il ?

B Il fait chaud.
Il fait froid.
Il fait beau.
Il fait mauvais.

To talk about weather in the future:

A Quel temps est-ce qu'il va faire ?

B J'espère qu'il va faire beau !

3b Le verbe *avoir* (parler des sentiments)

To express feeling cold or warm, the verb *avoir* is used:

Brrr ! J'**ai froid** à Paris. Mais on va **avoir chaud** à Marseille.

This structure is also used for saying you are hungry or thirsty:

J'**ai faim**, je vais manger.

J'**ai soif**, je vais boire.

3c Le verbe *être* (parler de l'état des choses)

The expressions *c'est chaud* and *c'est froid* using the verb *être* are used to describe things that are hot or cold.

A Tu ne bois pas ton café ?

B Non, c'est froid.

LET'S COMPARE FRENCH AND ENGLISH

You want to say that it is cold, you are cold and your coffee is cold. Which verb do you use in each case?

4 Le pronom complément de lieu *y*

The indirect pronoun *y* can replace an expression of place that has already been indicated. It precedes the verb in a present tense sentence.

Tu vas à la fête ce soir ? → Non, je n'**y** vais pas. (y = à la fête)

Ils vont souvent à la plage en août ? → Oui, en août ils **y** vont souvent. (y = à la plage)

Vous allez à la cathédrale cet après-midi ? → Non, nous n'**y** allons pas. (y = à la cathédrale)

Je vais aller à Biarritz pour faire du surf. → Je vais **y** aller pour faire du surf.

Je vais aller au Bassin de la Villette pour faire du kayak. → Je vais **y** aller pour faire du kayak.

Note: In the futur proche form, *y* goes between the verb *aller* and the infinitive.

France as a tourist destination

The French are proud of their way of life, their culture, their history and their country. This feeling is justified because, as a tourist destination, France is the most popular in the world – receiving more than 80 million visitors per year. (By contrast, Australia has about 8 million visitors annually.) Added to this, 45 million French people spend their holidays in France, mainly in August. No wonder the beaches, camping grounds, roads and hotels are so crowded!

Why is France so popular? The easy answer is ‘cultural heritage, art, history, food and wine, fashion, Paris ...’. But it’s more than that.

France has a great diversity of culture and landscapes. ‘France is the whole of Europe in one country.’ Let’s say you travel from Strasbourg in the far north-east, with its *choucroute*, beer, riesling and many people speaking Alsatien, a German dialect, all the way to Bayonne in the deep south-west. This is Basque country, where you will find stuffed squid, cured ham, berets, bullfights and people playing *pelota*. On the way there you pass through the mountains of Franche-Comté, the vineyards of Burgundy and the high plateau of Auvergne. It feels like you’ve visited several countries – except that everyone speaks French!



Alamy Stock Photo/Art Kowalsky



Alamy Stock Photo/Hemis

France has three very different coastlines: the Channel to the north, the Atlantic to the west and the Mediterranean to the south.

It has several mountain ranges: the Alps, the Pyrenees, the Vosges and Jura, and the Massif Central with its extinct volcanoes. Compared with other European countries, France has a mild and pleasant climate, particularly in spring and autumn.

The tourism industry in France is highly developed. The road and rail networks allow fast and efficient travel. Information is easy to get – there are over 3000 *Offices de Tourisme* in France, which means that even small towns have information centres. Hotels are regularly inspected and classified by a star system – from *hôtel une étoile* to *hôtel cinq étoiles*.

FIND OUT MORE

The stretch of water that separates France and England is known as the ‘Channel’, commonly referred to in English as the ‘English Channel’. What is the French name for this body of water? How do you think they feel about it being called the ‘English Channel’?

The English islands of Jersey and Guernsey are known as the ‘Channel Islands’. What is the French name for them? Why? (Hint: Consult a French map to find the answers.)

FIND OUT MORE

Do people in your country generally take long holidays (e.g. in summer), or several short holidays of a week or two? What are the advantages and disadvantages of the two types of holiday? What are popular places to visit for long or short holidays? How does this compare with French holiday choices?

La France en vacances

Most French workers have annual *congés payés* (paid holidays) of up to five weeks. Most French people take their holidays in the summer month of August, when schools are also on holidays. A more recent tendency is to take shorter breaks, such as two weeks at Christmas or Easter and a few days at *la Toussaint* (All Saints’ Day, 1 November) and *Mardi gras* (Shrove Tuesday, February–March). Most take their holidays in France, which makes popular holiday destinations and main highways very crowded during summer.

DES VACANCES EN FRANCE, OUI.

Mais quel style d'hébergement ?

Auberge de jeunesse

L'auberge de jeunesse Centrale est située à quelques minutes à pied des célèbres quartiers de la Bastille, des Halles et du Marais. L'auberge est près de la Gare de l'Est et la Gare du Nord (accès direct aux aéroports Charles de Gaulle et Orly). Le bâtiment est un ancien hôtel traditionnel. Votre chambre vous offre une belle vue sur Montmartre. **Services** : accès Internet, connexion wifi, laverie.



Photomontop/J.C&D. Pratt

Villa provençale

À louer juillet-août. 5 pièces, tout confort. Piscine, grand jardin. 70 km de la mer, 22 km de l'autoroute. Pour 6-8 personnes. Prix raisonnable.

Contacteur : Agence Logis Vacances, Cours Mirabeau, Aix en Provence.



Shutterstock.com/Anthony Shaw Photography

Gîte rural

Propriétaire : J. Moineau | **Téléphone** : 02 34 55 89 01

Description du gîte :

- ancienne résidence d'employés
 - située sur la ferme du propriétaire
 - entrée indépendante, terrasse et petit jardin derrière
 - très grande salle de séjour, avec coin cuisine et coin salon, chambre, salle de bains.
- Calme garanti.*



Alamy Stock Photo/David Cameron

Échanges de maisons et d'appartements

Partez en vacances l'esprit tranquille. Échangez votre maison et découvrez un nouveau style de vie pendant vos vacances.

Situations variées : à la mer, à la montagne, en ville, à la campagne.

Nous contacter : e-mail contact@changedemaison.fr

Airbnb – chambre au cœur de Paris

Nous vous proposons une chambre dans notre appartement au cœur de la capitale, en face du forum des Halles, et près du centre Pompidou. Le salon, la cuisine et la salle de bains et les toilettes sont partagés. La chambre est petite, très lumineuse et donne sur la cour, qui est très calme. Le quartier a de nombreux restaurants et magasins de souvenirs. **Vous pouvez visiter à pied** : Notre-Dame, le Musée d'Art Moderne et le Quartier Latin.



Alamy Stock Photo/Elizabeth Whiting & Associates

Le camping

Et puis, bien sûr, si vous préférez, vous pouvez faire du camping.

Il y a presque 11 000 sites de camping en France. Il y a souvent un centre aquatique avec piscine, un centre de jeux pour enfants et du wifi gratuit.



iStock.com/Gilles_Paire

PROJET

You are going to have a holiday in France. Decide how long you are going to be away and what you are going to take with you. Prepare an itinerary for the trip, describing the places you will visit; for example, the region, towns, historic sites, places where Australians fought in the First World War. Decide how you will travel (train, bus, bicycle) and what accommodation you will choose. Draw a map, plot your travel routes and add some illustrations. Describe what the weather will be like when you are there. Use online resources to help plan the details of your trip.

VOCABULAIRE



Useful holiday terms

un projet de vacances	holiday plan
une buvette	drinks stall
des petits plats (mpl)	little dishes
la côte	coast
le ciel	sky
la piscine	swimming pool
la plage	beach
le sable	sand
le parasol	umbrella
le thé à la menthe	mint tea
une assiette de pâtisseries	plate of pastries

Communicative expressions

Il y en a marre !	I'm fed up!
en plus	what's more
trop de monde	too many people
Bonne chance !	Good luck!
On ne sait jamais.	You never know.
Bien sûr que non.	Of course not.
Allons-y.	Let's go.
strictement interdit	strictly forbidden
C'est parfait.	That's perfect.
quand même	however
au lieu de	instead of
Je ne connais pas...	I don't know ...

Leisure activities

faire une randonnée	to go on a walking trip
faire du surf	to go surfing
faire une promenade en bateau	to go on a boat trip
rendre visite aux grands-parents	to visit the grandparents
faire un stage de voile	to do a sailing course
se faire bronzer	to get a tan, to sunbathe
se reposer	to rest
se baigner (dans le fleuve)	to swim (in the river)
tomber dans l'eau	to fall into the water
une activité aquatique / nautique	activity on the water
faire du kayak	to go kayaking
faire de la voile	to go sailing
faire du pédalo	to go out on a pedalo

Where to go and stay

à la mer	by the sea
à la montagne	in the mountains
à la campagne	in the country
en ville	in town
à l'auberge de jeunesse	in a youth hostel
au gîte rural	in a self-catering cottage
au camping	at a camping site
dans une chambre Airbnb	in an Airbnb room
dans un appartement	in a flat
dans une villa	in a house

COMMUNICATION

Now I know how to ...

- identify places in a French town (e.g. bank, post office, types of shops ...)
Voilà la banque et l'Office de tourisme.
Le bureau de poste est là-bas.
Le musée n'est pas loin d'ici.
- ask for directions about how to get to places
Pardon monsieur. Où se trouve la basilique ?
Nous cherchons la cathédrale Saint-Sernin.
Il y a un centre commercial par ici ?
- give directions about how to get to places
Vous allez à gauche, puis vous tournez à droite dans la rue du Taur.
Pour aller au centre commercial, il faut prendre le métro.
Continuez tout droit et la basilique Saint-Sernin est devant vous.
Vous pouvez visiter tout le centre-ville à pied.
- say where places are in relation to each other
C'est en face du café.
C'est loin de / près de la gare.
C'est devant l'église.
C'est à côté de l'Office de tourisme.
C'est derrière l'hôtel de ville.
- ask about holiday plans
Où est-ce que tu vas passer les vacances ?
Comment est-ce que tu vas y aller ?
Tu vas passer combien de temps en vacances ?
Quelles activités est-ce que tu penses faire en vacances ?
Qu'est-ce que tu vas prendre avec toi ?
- talk about the weather.
Quel temps fait-il ?
Il fait beau temps. / Il y a beaucoup de soleil. /
Il fait chaud.
Il fait mauvais temps. / Il fait froid. / Il pleut. /
Il y a du vent.

OUTILS

And I also know how to ...

- use present tense forms of verbs of the regular *-ir* group
- use present tense forms of the irregular verbs *partir* and *sortir*
- use a verb in the present tense plus an infinitive
- use *il faut* + the infinitive form to express necessity
- form and use the *futur proche*
- use *il fait* expressions to talk about the weather
- use *avoir*, *faire* and *être* to talk about heat and cold.

À L'ACTION !

Watch the video of three friends discussing their school holiday plans. Then create and film, or act out in class, a scenario in which three friends in France are discussing their holiday plans.

OR

Create a tourist brochure or multimedia display of your home town, region or suburb for French tourists. Say how they can get there, and describe places of interest in and around the area. Mention places to eat and places where they can stay. Say what is the best season to come for a visit, and what the weather is like. Include photos.



CULTURE

I know about some aspects of French culture.

- What is to be found in *la place du marché* in a French town?
- What are recreational and cultural centres for young people called?
- Why is Toulouse known as *la Ville Rose*?
- What is the function of *la Cité de l'espace*?
- What is the old name for the town of Toulouse? What is the 'other' language of the Toulouse region?
- Whose death was commemorated in the 11th century by the basilica of Saint-Sernin?
- Why was the Canal du Midi originally built? What is it used for today?
- On which coast of France would you find the best surfing? (Hint: Biarritz is one of the best-known surf beaches. Where is it?)
- Why was Paris Plages created?
- Why is France such a popular tourist destination? Give five reasons.
- What is the most popular (and crowded) holiday month in France?
- How are hotels in France classified?
- What type of accommodation would you like to have while staying in France? Explain your choice(s).
- What do *congés payés* represent for most French workers?

SAVOIR-FAIRE

And I understand what to ask or how to respond in certain situations.

- How would you offer help to someone who looks lost or has a problem?
- You are looking for a bank and you ask a passer-by. What would you say?
- How would you tell someone that they need to take the metro?
- How would you wish someone a pleasant stay in your town?
- How would you warn others that something is forbidden?
- How would you ask someone if they like the town they are in (e.g. Toulouse)?
- If a street is marked *sens unique*, can a driver do a U-turn?
- If you were going to stay in a *gîte rural*, what sort of accommodation would you expect and where would it be?
- If someone invited you to come on a *randonnée*, what would you expect to be doing?

VERBES – TABLEAUX DES CONJUGAISONS

1 1st group -er verbs

Most French verbs belong to this first group. They are indicated in the *Vocabulaire* with a **1**. They follow this pattern of endings:

parler	(to speak)
je parle	nous parlons
tu parles	vous parlez
il parle	ils parlent
elle parle	elles parlent
on parle	

Other verbs that follow this pattern of endings include:

accepter	danser	jouer	redoubler
accompagner	décider	laisser	regarder
adopter	déjeuner	louer	regretter
adorer	demander	montrer	rencontrer
aider	dépenser	noter	rentrer
aimer	désirer	organiser	réserver
amuser	dessiner	participer	respecter
apporter	détester	passer	rester
apprécier	dîner	penser	retrouver
arrêter	discuter	plaisanter	rêver
arriver	étudier	porter	réviser
bricoler	écouter	poser	risquer de
chanter	enregistrer	exister	télécharger
chercher	fêter	pratiquer	téléphoner à
commander	gagner	préparer	tourner
communiquer	garder	présenter	travailler
conseiller	habiter	proposer	traverser
continuer	hésiter	quitter	trouver
contribuer	intéresser	raconter	utiliser
coûter	inviter	recopier	visiter

1* 1st group -er verbs with minor variations

Some verbs in this group have minor variations to spelling and pronunciation, but otherwise follow the same pattern. They are indicated in the *Vocabulaire* with a 1*.

acheter	(to buy)
j'achète	nous achetons
tu achètes	vous achetez
il achète	ils achètent
elle achète	elles achètent
on achète	

The verb **racheter** (to buy back) follows the same pattern.

commencer	(to begin, to start)
je commence	nous commençons
tu commences	vous commencez
il commence	ils commencent
elle commence	elles commencent
on commence	

The verb **recommencer** (to start again) follows the same pattern.

emmener	(to take along)
j'emmène	nous emmenons
tu emmènes	vous emmenez
il emmène	ils emmènent
elle emmène	elles emmènent
on emmène	

The verb **promener** (to walk) follows the same pattern.

manger	(to eat)
je mange	nous mangeons
tu manges	vous mangez
il mange	ils mangent
elle mange	elles mangent
on mange	

The verb **ranger** (to put in order) follows the same pattern.

espérer	(to hope)
j'espère	nous espérons
tu espères	vous espérez
il espère	ils espèrent
elle espère	elles espèrent
on espère	

The verb **préférer** (to prefer) follows the same pattern.

1R 1st group -er reflexive verbs

Verbs that have a reflexive pronoun between the subject and the verb are called reflexive verbs. They are indicated in the *Vocabulaire* with a 1^R.

se coucher	(to go to bed)
je me couche	nous nous couchons
tu te couches	vous vous couchez
il se couche	ils se couchent
elle se couche	elles se couchent
on se couche	

Other regular -er conjugation reflexive verbs are: **s'adapter**, **s'amuser**, **s'habiller**, **s'installer**, **s'organiser**, **se baigner**, **se coucher**, **se décider**, **se préparer**, **se reposer**.

The reflexive verbs **se lever** and **s'appeler** have some spelling changes in the present tense.

se lever	(to get up)
je me lève	nous nous levons
tu te lèves	vous vous levez
il se lève	ils se lèvent
elle se lève	elles se lèvent
on se lève	

s'appeler	(to be called)
je m' appelle	nous nous appelons
tu t' appelles	vous vous appelez
il s' appelle	ils s' appellent
elle s' appelle	elles s' appellent
on s' appelle	

2 2nd group -ir verbs

This is a much smaller group of verbs. They are indicated in the *Vocabulaire* with a 2.

fini	(to finish)
je finis	nous finissons
tu finis	vous finissez
il finit	ils finissent
elle finit	elles finissent
on finit	

Some other commonly used verbs in this group are **choisir** (to choose), **grandir** (to grow), **obéir** (to obey), **punir** (to punish), **réussir** (to succeed) and **rougir** (to blush, to go red).

3 3rd group irregular verbs

These verbs are all irregular. They do not follow any of the earlier patterns. They are indicated in the *Vocabulaire* with a 3. The four most important and frequently used of these verbs are:

être	(to be)	avoir	(to have)	aller	(to go)	faire	(to do, to make)
je suis	nous sommes	j'ai	nous avons	je vais	nous allons	je fais	nous faisons
tu es	vous êtes	tu as	vous avez	tu vas	vous allez	tu fais	vous faites
il est	ils sont	il a	ils ont	il va	ils vont	il fait	ils font
elle est	elles sont	elle a	elles ont	elle va	elles vont	elle fait	elles font
on est		on a		on va		on fait	

Other irregular verbs include the following:

boire	(to drink)
je bois	nous buvons
tu bois	vous buvez
il boit	ils boivent
elle boit	elles boivent
on boit	

essayer	(to try)
j'essaie / essaye	nous essayons
tu essaies / essayes	vous essayez
il essaie / essaye	ils essaient
elle essaie / essaye	elles essaient / essayent
on essaie / essaye	

prendre	(to take)
je prends	nous prenons
tu prends	vous prenez
il prend	ils prennent
elle prend	elles prennent
on prend	

pouvoir	(to be able to)
je peux	nous pouvons
tu peux	vous pouvez
il peut	ils peuvent
elle peut	elles peuvent
on peut	

vendre	(to sell)
je vends	nous vendons
tu vends	vous vendez
il vend	ils vendent
elle vend	elles vendent
on vend	

venir	(to come)
je viens	nous venons
tu viens	vous venez
il vient	ils viennent
elle vient	elles viennent
on vient	

connaître	(to know, to be familiar with)
je connais	nous connaissons
tu connais	vous connaissez
il connaît	ils connaissent
elle connaît	elles connaissent
on connaît	

partir	(to leave)
je pars	nous partons
tu pars	vous partez
il part	ils partent
elle part	elles partent
on part	

sortir	(to go out)
je sors	nous sortons
tu sors	vous sortez
il sort	ils sortent
elle sort	elles sortent
on sort	

savoir	(to know)
je sais	nous savons
tu sais	vous savez
il sait	ils savent
elle sait	elles savent
on sait	

The verbs **attendre** and **descendre** follow the same pattern as **vendre**.

vouloir	(to want)
je veux	nous voulons
tu veux	vous voulez
il veut	ils veulent
elle veut	elles veulent
on veut	

RÉSUMÉ GRAMMATICAL

La forme féminine des adjectifs

The general rule for forming feminine adjectives is to add **-e** to the masculine form.

m masculin	f féminin
français	français e

If the adjective ends in **-e** there is no change.

belge	belge
-------	-------

Other adjectives change as follows:

australien	australien ne
violet	violet te
premier	premiè re
sportif	sportiv e
dangereux	dangereu se
gros	gross e

Special cases:

gentil	gentil e
vieux	vieil le
beau	bell e
blanc	blanch e

Some adjectives do not have feminine forms; they are invariable. For example:

marron	super	sympa
--------	-------	-------

Les formes plurielles des noms et des adjectifs

The general rule to form plurals of nouns and adjectives is to add **-s** or **-x**.

s singulier	p pluriel
un étudiant	des étudiant s
un jeu	des jeu x

If the noun or adjective ends in **-s**, there is no change.

un étudiant français	des étudiants français
----------------------	------------------------

If the noun or adjective ends in **-x**, there is no change.

un vieu x livre	de vieu x livres
------------------------	-------------------------

For nouns or adjectives ending in **-eau** or **-eu**, add **-x**.

un beau chien	de beau x chiens
un cheveu	des cheveu x

Nouns ending in **-al** change to **-aux**.

un animal	des anim aux
-----------	---------------------

Adjectifs possessifs

my	your	his/her
mon frère	ton frère	son frère
ma sœur	ta sœur	sa sœur
mes copains	tes copains	ses copains
our	your	their
notre père	votre mère	leur grand-mère
nos parents	vos enfants	leurs grands-parents

Adjectifs démonstratifs

masculin	féminin
s ce chat	s cette maison
p ces chats	p ces maisons
s cet enfant	
p ces enfants	

Complément d'objet direct

s singulier	p pluriel
me (me)	nous (us)
te (you)	vous (you)
le (him, it)	les (them)
la (her, it)	

Je **le** connais.

Je ne **le** connais pas.

Vous **la** connaissez ?

Vous ne **la** connaissez pas ?

Interrogatifs

Où ? (Where?)

Où est-ce que tu vas ?

Tu vas où ?

Quand ? (When?)

Quand est-ce que tu pars ?

Tu pars quand ?

Comment ? (How?)

Comment allez-vous ?

Comment tu vas porter tous ces sacs ?

Pourquoi ? (Why?)

Pourquoi pleures-tu ?

Pourquoi est-ce que tu pleures ?

Combien ? (How much?)

Combien est-ce qu'il coûte, ce vélo ?

Elle coûte combien, cette voiture ?

Combien de ? (How many?)

Combien de frères est-ce que tu as ?

Tu as combien de chats ?

Que ? / Qu'est-ce que ? / Quoi ? (What? – object)

Que veux-tu ?

Qu'est-ce que tu veux ?

Tu veux quoi ?

Quel ? / Quelle ? / Quels ? / Quelles ? (What? Which?)

On est quel jour ?

Quelle est la date aujourd'hui ?

Quels sont vos festivals préférés ?

Quelles sont vos chansons préférées ?

Qui ? (Who? – subject)

Qui parle ?

Qui est-ce qui parle ?

Qui ? (Who/m? – object)

Avec qui viens-tu à la fête ?

Qui est-ce que tu invites ce soir ?

VOCABULAIRE FRANÇAIS-ANGLAIS

Key to symbols

<i>m</i>	masculine noun	1	1st group -er verbs (see p. 184).
<i>f</i>	feminine noun	1*	1st group -er verbs with a minor change (see p. 185).
<i>mpl</i>	masculine plural noun	1^R	1st group -er reflexive verbs (see p. 186).
<i>fpl</i>	feminine plural noun	2	2nd group -ir verbs (see p. 186).
<i>fam</i>	<i>familier</i> (informal)	3	3rd group irregular verbs (see pp. 186–7).

Adjectives are usually given in the masculine singular form followed by feminine singular endings in brackets.

A

à at, to
à **bientôt** see you soon
à **côté de** beside
à **demain** see you tomorrow
à **droite** (on the) right
à **gauche** (on the) left
à **l'angle de** on the corner of
à **l'est de** to the east of
à **l'étranger** abroad, overseas
à **la campagne** in the country
à **la maison** at home
à **la mer** by the seaside
à **la montagne** in the mountains
à **la plage** at the beach
à **pied** on foot
à **tout à l'heure** see you later
accessoire (m) accessory
actif (-ive) active, energetic
activité (f) activity
affiche (f) poster
âge (m) age
acheter 1* to buy
adorer 1 to adore
aider 1 to help
aimer 1 to love
aller 3 to go
alors so, then, well
ami (m), amie (f) friend
amour (m) love
amuse-bouche (m) appetiser
s'amuser 1^R to enjoy oneself
an (m) year
ancien(ne) old, ancient, former

anglais (m) English (language)
anglais(e) English
anglophone English speaker
animal (m) animal
animal (m) de compagnie pet
anniversaire (m) birthday
annonce (f) advertisement, notice
annuel(le) yearly
août (m) August
appareil (m) device, appliance
s'appeler 1^R to call oneself (name)
apporter 1 to bring
après after(wards)
après-midi (m) afternoon
apprendre 3 to learn
arabe Arabic
architecture (f) architecture
armé(e) armed
arrêt (m) du bus (bus) stop
arrêter 1 to stop
arriver 1 to arrive
arts (mpl) médiatiques media
arts (mpl) plastiques art
arts (mpl) visuels visual arts
assez enough, quite, rather
assiette (f) plate
attacher 1 to attach
au bout de at the end of
au cœur de in the heart of
au lieu de instead of
au revoir goodbye
auberge (f) de jeunesse youth hostel
aujourd'hui today
Australie (f) Australia
australien(ne) Australian

automne (m) autumn
autre other
avec with
avion (m) plane
avoir 3 to have
avoir besoin de to be in need of
avoir chaud to be hot
avoir de la chance to be lucky
avoir envie de to be keen to
avoir faim to be hungry
avoir froid to be cold
avoir l'air (snob) to look like (a snob)
avoir mal to be in pain
avoir peur to be afraid
avoir soif to be thirsty
avoir sommeil to be sleepy
avril (m) April

B

se baigner 1^R to go swimming
balle (f) ball
bande (f) dessinée illustrated comic book, graphic novel
banque (f) bank
bar (m) à tapas tapas bar
basilique (f) basilica
baskets (fpl) sneakers
bâtiment (m) building
beau (belle) handsome, beautiful
beau-fils (m) son-in-law
beau-frère (m) brother-in-law
beaucoup (de) many, a lot (of)
belge Belgian
belle-fille (f) daughter-in-law

belle-sœur (f) sister-in-law
bête stupid
beurre (m) butter
bien well
bien sûr of course
bientôt soon
bienvenue welcome
bifteck (m) **frites** steak and chips
billet (m) **de retard** late note
biozone (f) ecological habitat in a zoo
biscuit (m) biscuit
blanc(he) white
bleu(e) blue
blond(e) blond, fair-haired
blouson (m) short jacket
boisson (f) drink
boîte (f) box, night club (*fam*)
bon(ne) good
bon appétit enjoy your meal
bonjour hello
bonne chance good luck
bottes (*fpl*) boots
bouche (f) mouth
boucherie (f) butcher shop
boucle (f) **d'oreille** earring
boulangerie (f) bakery
bras (m) arm
bref in short
brosse (f) crew cut
brun(e) brown
bureau (m) **de poste** post office
buvette (f) stall for drinks

C

ça that
ça y est ! that's it !
cadeau (m) present
café (m) coffee
café au lait coffee with milk
cahier (m) notebook, exercise book
calculatrice (f) calculator
camarade (m, f) **de classe** classmate
camping (m) camping, camping site
canadien(ne) Canadian
cantine (f) canteen
car (m) bus
carafe (f) **d'eau** jug of water
carotte (f) carrot
carte (f) card, map, menu
carte (f) **bancaire** credit card

cas (m) case
caserne (f) **de pompiers** fire station
casquette (f) cap
catalogue (m) catalogue
cathédrale (f) cathedral
ce (*cet, cette*) it, this, that
ceinture (f) belt
célèbre famous
centre (m) **commercial** shopping centre
centre (m) **de documentation et d'information (CDI)** Resource Centre
centre-ville (m) town centre
céréale (f) cereal
ces these, those
c'est it is
chaise (f) chair
chambre (f) bedroom
chanson (f) song
chanter **1** to sing
chargeur (m) (battery) charger
chat (m) cat
châtain chestnut brown
chatter **1** to chat online
chaud(e) warm, hot
chaussures (*fpl*) shoes
chemise (f) shirt
cher (chère) dear, expensive
chercher **1** to look for
cheval (m) horse
cheveux (*mpl*) hair
chez at the place of
chien (m) dog
chiffons (*mpl*) (*fam*) old clothes, bits and pieces, rags
chimie (f) Chemistry
chocolat (m) **chaud** hot chocolate (drink)
choisir **2** to choose
choix (m) choice
ci-dessous below
ciel (m) sky
cinéma (m) cinema
cirque (m) circus
classeur (m) page binder, folder
clé (f) **USB** USB key
clinique (f) clinic
code (m) **vestimentaire** dress code
cœur (m) heart
coin (m) corner
col (m) **de fourrure** fur collar
collectionner **1** to collect

collège (m) junior secondary school
combien (*de*) how many, how much
commander **1** order
comme as, like
comme d'habitude as usual
commencer **1** to start
comment how
commissariat (m) **de police** police station
compliment (m) compliment
compliqué(e) complicated
comprendre **3** to understand
concert (m) performance
concours (m) competition
confiture (f) jam
confortable comfortable
connaître **3** to know someone
conseil (m) advice
console (f) console
content(e) pleased, glad
continuer **1** to continue
contrôle (m) test
copain (m), **copine** (f) (*fam*) friend
copie (f) copy, test paper
coq (m) rooster
corps (m) body
correspondant (m), **correspondante** (f) penfriend
côte (f) coast
coton (m) cotton
cou (m) neck
se coucher **1^R** to go to bed
couleur (f) colour
couper **1** to cut
cour (f) courtyard
cours (m) class, course, lesson
court(e) short
cousin (m), **cousine** (f) cousin
couvert(e) covered
craquer **1** to fall apart
crayon (m) pencil
créer **1** to create
crêpe (f) pancake
croissant (m) croissant
cuir (m) leather
cuisine (f) kitchen

D

d'abord first of all
d'accord OK
danse (f) dance
danser 1 to dance
date (f) date
de from, of
de plus en plus more and more
de rien you're welcome
de temps en temps from time to time
décembre (m) December
découvrir 3 to discover
dégoûté(e) angry, fed up, disgusted
déjà already
déjeuner (m) lunch
déjeuner 1 to eat/have lunch
délicieux (-euse) delicious
demain tomorrow
demi(e) half
dents (fpl) teeth
se dépêcher 1* to hurry
dépenser 1 de l'argent to spend money
déposer 1 to drop off
depuis since
dernier(-ière) last
derrière behind
des some
descendre 3 à to get off the train at
description (f) description
désirer 1 to want
désolé(e) sorry
dessert (m) dessert
dessin (m) sketch, drawing
dessus on it, on top (of it)
détester 1 to detest
devant in front of
devoirs (mpl) homework
dictée (f) dictation (test)
dimanche (m) Sunday
dîner (m) dinner
dîner 1 to eat dinner
dinosaure (m) dinosaur
dire 3 to say
disco(thèque) (f) nightclub
(c'est) dommage that's a pity
donc so, therefore
donner 1 to give
dont of which

doux (douce) gentle, soft
droite (f) right (direction)
drôle funny
dur(e) hard

E

eau (f) water
eau (f) minérale mineral water
échange (m) exchange
échanger 1* to exchange
école (f) school
écouter 1 to listen (to)
écrire 3 to write
éducation (f) civique Civics
éducation (f) physique et sportive (EPS) Physical Education
église (f) church
éléphant (m) elephant
élève (m, f) pupil
elle she
elles they (feminine)
emmener 1* en voiture to take by car
emploi (m) du temps timetable
employé (m), employée (f) employee
en brosse crew-cut
en captivité in captivity
en face de opposite
en général in general, overall
en plus what's more
en solde on sale
en somme all in all, in summary
en tout cas in any case
en ville in the city, town
enchanté(e) delighted
encore (une fois) again
endroit (m) place, spot
enfant (m, f) unique only child
enfin finally
enquête (f) inquiry, survey
ensemble together
entier (-ière) whole
entrée (f) entry, first course or entrée
épicerie (f) grocery shop
épouse (f) wife, spouse
époux (m) husband, spouse
espérer 1* to hope, to wish for
esprit (m) tranquille calm mind
essayer 1 to try (on)

et and
étage (f) floor, level
été (m) summer
étranger (-ère) foreign
être 3 to be
être d'accord to agree
être en forme to be fit
être en retard to be late
étroit(e) narrow
étudiant (m), étudiante (f) student
exactement exactly
expression (f) artistique artistic expression

F

fabriquer 1 to make, manufacture
facile easy
faire 3 to do, to make
se faire bronzer to get a tan
faire de la voile to go sailing
faire des remarques to make (unpleasant) comments
faire du camping to go camping
faire du kayak to go kayaking
faire du pédalo to go out on a pedal boat
faire du surf to go surfing
faire les courses to do the shopping
faire un stage de voile to do a sailing course
faire une promenade en bateau to go on a boat trip
famille (f) family
fatigué(e) tired
faux (fausse) fake, false, wrong
favoriser 1 to promote
félicitations congratulations
féminin(e) feminine
femme (f) woman
ferme (f) farm
festival (m) festival
fête (f) fête, celebration
fêter 1 to celebrate
feu (m) d'artifice fireworks display
feutre (m) felt-tip pen
février (m) February
fi hiers (mpl) de musique music files
filles (f) girl, daughter
fil (m) son, boy
fini(e) finished

fi ir 2 to finish
fleur (f) flower
fleuve (m) river
foot (m) football (soccer)
formidable great
foulard (m) scarf
français (m) French (language)
français(e) French
France (f) France
francophone French speaker
frère (m) brother
fringues (fpl) (fam) clothes (slang)
frisé(e) curly
froid(e) cold
fromage (m) cheese
fruit (m) piece of fruit
fruits (mpl) fruit

G

gagner 1 to win
gamme (f) range
garçon (m) boy
gardien (m), gardienne (f) attendant, keeper
gare (f) station
garniture (f) side dish
gâteau (m) cake
gauche (f) left (direction)
génial(e) great, brilliant
genou (m) knee
gentil(le) kind, nice
géographie (géo) (f) Geography
girafe (f) giraffe
gitan(e) Romani
gîte (m) rural self-catering cottage
glace (f) ice-cream
gomme (f) rubber
gorille (m) gorilla
goûter (m) afternoon tea
grand(e) tall
grandir 2 to grow
grand-mère (f) grandmother
grand-père (m) grandfather
grand(e) tall
grands-parents (mpl) grandparents
gratin (m) dauphinois dauphinoise potatoes
gratuit(e) free of charge
grave serious
grignoter 1 to nibble

gris(e) grey
gros(se) big, fat
guerre (f) mondiale world war
guitare (f) guitar

H

s'habiller 1^R to get dressed
habitat (m) naturel natural habitat
habiter 1 to live (in, at)
haricots (mpl) verts green beans
hébergement (m) lodging
heure (f) hour
heure du dîner dinner time
heureusement fortunately, luckily
hippopotame (m) hippopotamus
histoire (f) history, story
histoire-géographie (histoire-géo) (f) Social Sciences
hiver (m) winter
homme (m) man
hôpital (m) hospital
horrible awful
hors d'œuvre (m) hors d'œuvre, starter
hôtel (m) hotel
hôtel de ville town hall

I

ici here
idée (f) idea
idéal(e) ideal
il he
il faut it's necessary, one must
il y a there is, there are
ils they (masculine and mixed)
imbattable unbeatable
imperméable waterproof
insupportable tiresome
intelligent(e) intelligent
interdit(e) forbidden, prohibited
intéresser 1 to interest
interrogation (interro) (f) (= le contrôle oral) oral test
italien(ne) Italian

J

jaloux (-ouse) jealous

jamais never
jambe (f) leg
jambon (m) ham
janvier (m) January
jardin (m) garden
jardin zoologique zoo, zoological garden
jaune yellow
je I
jean (m) jeans, denim
jeu (m) vidéo video game
jeudi (m) Thursday
jeune young
jouer 1 to play
jour (m) day
jour de l'An New Year Day
jour de Noël Christmas Day
journée (f) day
juillet (m) July
juin (m) June
jupe (f) skirt
jus (m) de fruits fruit juice
juste correct, right

K

Kanak indigenous, traditional owner of New Caledonia
kangourou (m) kangaroo

L

la the (feminine)
là there
là-bas over there
laboratoire (labo) (m) laboratory
laid(e) ugly
lait (m) milk
lancer 1* to throw
langue (f) tongue
langue maternelle mother tongue
lapin (m) rabbit
le the (masculine)
leçon (f) lesson
lecture (f) reading
léger (-ère) light (not heavy)
légume (m) vegetable
les the (plural)
leur, leurs their
se lever 1^R to get up

libérez-nous free us
liberté (f) freedom
libre free
lion (m) lion
lire 3 to read
lit (m) bed
littérature (f) literature
livre (m) book, textbook
loin (de) far (from)
loisirs (mpl) leisure activities
long(ue) long
lumineux (-euse) full of light
lundi (m) Monday
lunettes (fpl) glasses, spectacles
lunettes de soleil sunglasses
lycée (m) senior secondary school

M

M. (Monsieur) Mr
ma my
madame (f), mesdames (fpl)
 madam, ladies
mademoiselle (f), mesdemoiselles (fpl) miss, (young) ladies
magasin (m) shop
maghrébin(e) from the Maghreb
 (Algeria, Morocco, Tunisia)
mai (m) May
main (f) hand
maintenant now
maintenir 2 to maintain, keep
mairie (f) town hall
mais but
maison (f) house
malade ill, sick, unwell
malheureusement unfortunately
maman (f) mother, mum
mamie (f) (fam) grandmother
manger 1* to eat
marchander 1 to bargain
marché (m) market
marché aux puces flea market
mardi (m) Tuesday
marocain(e) Moroccan
marque (f) brand
marrant(e) cute, funny
marron brown (eyes)
mars (m) March
masculin(e) masculine
masque (m) mask
match (m) de foot football match
mathématiques (fpl) Maths
matière (f) (school) subject
matin (m) morning
mauvais(e) bad
méchant(e) nasty
médecin (m) doctor
meilleur(e) best
même even, same
mer (f) sea
merci thank you
mercredi (m) Wednesday
mère (f) mother
merveilleux (-euse) marvellous
mes my
méto (m) metro, underground train
mettre 3 en pratique to put into
 practice
midi midday, noon
mignon(ne) cute
mille thousand
mi-long(ue) half-length
mime (m) mime arts
mince thin, slim
Mlle (Mademoiselle) Miss
Mme (Madame) Mrs
moche (fam) ugly
mode (f) fashion
modèle (m) model
moi me, myself
moins less
mois (m) month
mon my
monde (m) world
monsieur (m), messieurs (mpl) sir,
 sirs
montagne (f) mountain
montrer 1 to show
morceau (m) piece
motard (m), motarde (f) motor
 cyclist
moyen (ne) average
muet (te) mute, making no sound
musée (m) museum
musique (f) music
mystère (m) mystery

N

natation (f) swimming
nature (f) nature
ne... pas not

négociier 1 to find a way through, to
 negotiate
n'est-ce pas isn't it
neige (f) snow
néo-calédonien(ne) New Caledonian
néo-zélandais(e) (from) New Zealand
neuf (neuve) new (not old)
neveu (m) nephew
nez (m) nose
nièce (f) niece
Noël (m) Christmas
noir(e) black
nom (m) name
non no
normalement normally, usually
nos our
note (f) mark, note (music)
notre our
nous we, us
nouveau (-elle) new
Nouvelle-Calédonie (f) New
 Caledonia
Nouvelle-Zélande (f) New Zealand
novembre (m) November
nuît (f) night
nul(le) hopeless
numéro (m) number

O

objet (m) object
octobre (m) October
œil (m) eye
œuf (m) egg
offi e (m) de tourisme tourist office
offre (f) offer
offrir 2 to offer
oiseau (m) bird
on we, one
on ne sait jamais one never knows
on se souvient de... we remember ...
oncle (m) uncle
orchestre (m) orchestra
ordinateur (m) computer
ordinateur portable laptop computer
oreille (f) ear
ou or
où where
oublier 1 to forget
oui yes

P

pain (*m*) bread
pantalon (*m*) trousers
papa (*m*) father, dad
papi (*m*) (*fam*) grandfather
papier (*m*) paper
par contre on the other hand
par exemple for example
paraître 3 to appear
parasol (*m*) sun umbrella
parc (*m*) park
parce que because
pardon sorry
parents (*mpl*) parents
parfait(e) perfect
parfois sometimes
parka (*f*) parka (knee-length coat)
parler 1 to speak
paroles (*fpl*) words
partagé(e) shared
partir 3 to leave
partout everywhere
passer 1 (en scène) to appear (on stage)
passer des heures à (faire) to spend hours doing
pâté (*m*) **de campagne** farmhouse pâté
pâtes (*fpl*) pasta
pauvre poor
payer 1 to pay
pays (*m*) country
peau (*f*) **de mouton** sheepskin
peinture (*f*) painting
pendant during
pénible painful
penser 1 to think
père (*m*) father
perroquet (*m*) parrot
perruche (*f*) budgerigar
pétanque (*f*) petanque, French bowls
petit(e) small
petit déjeuner breakfast
petite-fille (*f*) granddaughter
petit-fils (*m*) grandson
(un) peu (a) little
peu importe it doesn't matter
peut-être perhaps
pharmacie (*f*) chemist
photo (*f*) photo

photographie (*f*) photography
physique (*f*) Physics
pied (*m*) foot
piscine (*f*) swimming pool
pistolet (*m*) pistol, gun
place (*f*) seat, place
plage (*f*) beach
plaisanter 1 to joke
plan (*m*) plan, map
planche (*f*) **à voile** windsurfing
plat (*m*) dish
plat principal main dish
plateau (*m*) **de fromages** cheese board
pleuvoir 3 to rain
pluriel(le) plural
plus more
plus tard later
poisson (*m*) fish
poisson rouge goldfish
pomme (*f*) apple
pomme (*f*) **de terre** potato
pont (*m*) bridge
portefeuille (*m*) wallet
poste (*f*) post office
portable (*m*) mobile phone
porter 1 to wear, to carry
poule (*f*) hen, fowl
poulet (*m*) chicken (meat)
pour for, (in order) to
pourquoi why
préférer 1* to prefer
premier (-ière) first
prendre 3 to take
préparé(e) prepared, ready
se préparer 1^R to prepare oneself
près (de) near (to)
présenter 1 to introduce
presque almost
prétentieux (-euse) pretentious
printemps (*m*) spring
prix (*m*) price
problème (*m*) problem
prof (*m, f*) (*fam*) teacher
professeur (*m, f*) teacher
projet (*m*) project
projet de vacances holiday plan
se promener 1^R to go for a walk
proposer 1 to offer
propriétaire (*m, f*) owner
puis since, then
pull (*m*) jumper, pullover

Q

qualité (*f*) quality
quand when
quand même all the same
quartier (*m*) neighbourhood, area
que what, that, which
québécois(e) of, from Quebec
quel(le) what, which
quelque chose something
quelquefois sometimes
question (*f*) question
(en) queue (*f*) **de cheval** (in a ponytail)
qui who
quitter 1 to leave
quoi what

R

radio (*f*) radio
raide straight (hair)
raisins (*mpl*) grapes
randonnée (*f*) walk, hike
rapidement quickly
rappel (*m*) recall, reminder
raquette (*f*) tennis racquet
rarement rarely, seldom
rayon (*m*) department (in store)
rechercher 1 to look for
récolte (*f*) harvest
recommander 1 to recommend
récréation (récré) (*f*) recreation break
regarder 1 to look at, to watch
règle (*f*) rule, ruler
rencontrer 1 to meet
rendez-vous (*m*) meeting, appointment
rentrée (*f*) start of school year
rentrer 1 to come back (home)
répéter 1* to repeat, to rehearse
réponse (*f*) answer
se reposer 1^R to rest
rester 1 to stay, to remain
résultat (*m*) result
réussir 2 to succeed
se réveiller 1^R to wake up
réviser 1 to revise
revoir 3 to see again

riz (m) rice
roi (m) king
roman (m) novel
rose pink
rouge red
rouquin (m), **rouquine** (f) redhead
routine (f) **quotidienne** daily routine
roux (-sse) red-haired
rue (f) street
rythme (m) rhythm

S

sa his, her
sable (m) sand
sac (m) handbag
sac à dos (m) backpack
salade (f) salad
salade de pommes de terre potato salad
salle (f) room
salle de bains bathroom
salle de permanence room for students in free periods
salle de séjour living room
salon (m) living room
salut hi
samedi (m) Saturday
sans without
sans doute no doubt
santé (f) health
saucisson (m) (cured) sausage
sciences (fpl) de la vie et de la terre (SVT) Natural Science
sculpture (f) sculpture
séjour (m) stay
semaine (f) week
sens unique (m) one-way (street)
sensationnel(le) sensational
septembre September
serré(e) tight
sérieux (-euse) serious, conscientious
service (m) serving
ses his, her
seul(e) single, alone
seulement only
short (m) shorts
si if
siècle (m) century
sièges (mpl) headquarters
s'il vous plaît please

similicuir (m) artificial leather, leatherette
simplement simply
singe (m) monkey
sinon otherwise
ski (m) skiing
smartphone (m) smartphone
sœur (f) sister
soir (m) evening
soleil (m) sun
solution (f) answer, solution
son his, her
sortir **3** to go out, to leave, to take out
souhaiter **1** to wish
soupe (f) soup
soupe aux légumes vegetable soup
sous under
se souvenir **1^R** de to remember
souvent often
sport (m) sport
sportif (-ive) fond of sports, athletic
stade (m) stadium
stage (m) course
stylo-bille (m) ballpoint pen
suggérer **1*** to suggest
suisse Swiss
suivant(e) following
superbe superb
supermarché (m) supermarket
sur on
sûr(e) certain, sure
surf (m) surfing
surprise (f) surprise
surtout especially
sympa (**sympathique**) friendly, nice

T

ta your
table (f) table
tableau (m) **blanc** whiteboard
taille (f) size
tante (f) aunt
taper **1** to tap
tarte (f) tart
tarte aux pommes apple tart
tartine (f) slice of bread with a spread on it
tatouage (m) tattoo, tattooing
tchao bye

technologie (**techno**) (f) technology, Design and Technology
tee-shirt (m) T-shirt
télécharger **1*** to download
téléphone (m) **portable** mobile phone
télévision (f) TV
témoin (m) witness
temps (m) weather
tenir **3** **chaud** to keep warm
tenue (f) **de plage** beach wear
terminer **1** to finish
terrain (m) **de foot** football (soccer) field
tes your
tête (f) head
thé (m) tea
thé à la menthe mint tea
théâtre (m) theatre, drama
tiens look, hey
timide shy
toi you (*singular*), yourself
tomber **1** to fall
ton your
toucan (m) toucan
toujours always
tourner **1** to turn
tout all, very
tout de suite at once, immediately
tout droit straight ahead
tout le monde everybody
tranquille tranquil, calm
travail (m) work
travailler **1** to work
travailleurs (mpl) workers
très very
triste sad
trop too (much)
trop de monde too many people
trousse (f) pencil case
trouver **1** to find
tu you (*singular*)

U

un, une a, an, one

V

vacances (*fpl*) holidays
valise (*f*) suitcase
vas-y go ahead, go on
végétarien(ne) vegetarian
vélo (*m*) bike
vendange (*f*) grape harvest
vendeur (*m*), **vendeuse** (*f*) seller, shop assistant
vendre **3** to sell
vendredi (*m*) Friday
venir **3** to come
vent (*m*) wind
ventre (*m*) stomach
vers towards
vert(e) green
veste (*f*) hip-length jacket
vêtements (*mpl*) clothes, clothing
vie (*f*) life
vieux (vieille) old
villa (*f*) villa, large house in the country
village (*m*) village
ville (*f*) city, town
ville natale home town
vin (*m*) **rouge / rosé / blanc** wine: red, rosé, white
visage (*m*) face
visite (*f*) **guidée** guided visit
visiter **1** to visit
voilà there is, there are
voir **3** to see
volé(e) stolen
volontiers with pleasure
vos, votre your
vrai(e) true, real
vraiment really
vue (*f*) view

Z

zippé(e) zipped
zoo (*m*) zoo

W

week-end (*m*) weekend

Y

y there
yaourt (*m*) yoghurt
yeux (*mpl*) eyes

VOCABULAIRE ANGLAIS-FRANÇAIS

Key to symbols

<i>m</i>	masculine noun	1	1st group -er verbs (see p. 184).
<i>f</i>	feminine noun	1*	1st group -er verbs with a minor change (see p. 185).
<i>mpl</i>	masculine plural noun	1^R	1st group -er reflexive verbs (see p. 186).
<i>fpl</i>	feminine plural noun	2	2nd group -ir verbs (see p. 186).
<i>fam</i>	<i>familier</i> (informal)	3	3rd group irregular verbs (see pp. 186–7).

Adjectives are usually given in the masculine singular form followed by feminine singular endings in brackets.

A

a, an un, une
abroad à l'étranger
accessory accessoire (*m*)
active actif(-ive)
to adore adorer **1**
advertisement annonce (*f*)
advice conseil (*m*)
after(wards) après
afternoon après-midi (*m*)
afternoon tea goûter (*m*)
again encore (une fois)
age âge (*m*)
to agree être **3** d'accord
all tout
all the same quand même
almost presque
alone seul(e)
already déjà
always toujours
ancient ancien(ne)
and et
animal animal (*m*)
answer réponse (*f*), solution (*f*)
to appear paraître **3**
to appear (on stage) passer **1** (en scène)
appetiser amuse-bouche (*m*)
apple pomme (*f*)
apple tart tarte (*f*) aux pommes
appliance appareil (*m*)
appointment rendez-vous (*m*)
April avril (*m*)
Arabic arabe
architecture architecture (*f*)

arm bras (*m*)
to arrive arriver **1**
art arts (*mpl*) plastiques
artistic expression expression (*f*) artistique
as comme
as usual comme d'habitude
at à
at home à la maison
at once tout de suite
at the beach à la plage
at the end of au bout de
at the place of chez
to attach attacher **1**
attendant gardien (*m*), gardienne (*f*)
August août (*m*)
aunt tante (*f*)
Australia Australie (*f*)
Australian australien(ne)
autumn automne (*m*)
average moyen(ne)
awful horrible

B

backpack sac à dos
bad mauvais(e)
bakery boulangerie (*f*)
ballpoint pen stylo-bille (*m*)
bank banque (*f*)
to bargain marchander **1**
basilica basilique (*f*)
bathroom salle (*f*) de bains
to be être **3**
to be afraid avoir **3** peur

to be called s'appeler **1^R**
to be cold avoir **3** froid
to be hot avoir **3** chaud
to be hungry avoir **3** faim
to be in need of avoir **3** besoin de
to be in pain avoir **3** mal
to be keen to avoir **3** envie de
to be late être **3** en retard
to be lucky avoir **3** de la chance
to be sleepy avoir **3** sommeil
to be thirsty avoir **3** soif
beach plage (*f*)
beach wear tenue (*f*) de plage
beautiful beau (belle)
because parce que
bed lit (*m*)
bedroom chambre (*f*)
behind derrière
Belgian belge
belt ceinture (*f*)
beside à côté de
best meilleur(e)
big gros(se)
bike vélo (*m*)
bird oiseau (*m*)
birthday anniversaire (*m*)
biscuit biscuit (*m*)
black noir(e)
blond blond(e)
blue bleu(e)
body corps (*m*)
book livre (*m*)
boots bottes (*fpl*)
boy garçon (*m*)
brand marque (*f*)

bread pain (*m*)
(slice of) bread with a spread on it
 tartine (*f*)
breakfast petit déjeuner (*m*)
bridge pont (*m*)
bright (of colour) voyant(e)
brilliant génial(e)
to bring apporter **1**
brown brun(e), marron (eyes)
brother frère (*m*)
brother-in-law beau-frère (*m*)
brown brun(e)
budgerigar perruche (*f*)
building bâtiment (*m*)
bus (auto)bus (*m*)
bus stop arrêt (*m*) du bus
but mais
butcher shop boucherie (*f*)
butter beurre (*m*)
to buy acheter **1***
by the seaside à la mer
bye salut, tchao

C

cake gâteau (*m*)
calculator calculatrice (*f*)
calm tranquille
camping, camping site camping (*m*)
Canadian canadien(ne)
canteen cantine (*f*)
cap casquette (*f*)
carrot carotte (*f*)
case cas (*m*)
cat chat (*m*)
catalogue catalogue (*m*)
cathedral cathédrale (*f*)
to celebrate fêter **1**
celebration fête (*f*)
cereal céréale (*f*)
chair chaise (*f*)
charger chargeur (*m*)
to chat online chatter **1**
cheese fromage (*m*)
cheese board plateau (*m*) de
 fromages
chemist pharmacie (*f*)
Chemistry chimie (*f*)
chicken poulet (*m*)
clothing vêtements (*mpl*)
chestnut brown châtain

chicken (meat) poulet (*m*)
choice choix (*m*)
to choose choisir **2**
Christmas Noël (*m*)
Christmas Day jour (*m*) de Noël
church église (*f*)
cinema cinéma (*m*)
circus cirque (*m*)
city ville (*f*)
civics éducation (*f*) civique
class (course, lesson) cours (*m*)
classmate camarade (*m, f*) de classe
clinic clinique (*f*)
clothes, clothing vêtements (*mpl*),
 fringues (*fpl*) (*fam*)
coast côte (*f*)
coffee café (*m*)
coffee with milk café au lait
colour couleur (*f*)
to collect collectionner **1**
to come venir **3**
to come back (home) rentrer **1**
comfortable confortable
comic book bande (*f*) dessinée
competition concours (*m*)
complicated compliqué(e)
compliment compliment (*m*)
computer ordinateur (*m*)
congratulations félicitations
console console (*f*)
to continue continuer **1**
corner coin (*m*)
correct juste
cotton coton (*m*)
country pays (*m*)
course cours (*m*), stage (*m*)
courtyard cour (*f*)
cousin cousin (*m*), cousine (*f*)
covered couvert(e)
to create créer **1**
credit card carte (*f*) bancaire
croissant croissant (*m*)
curly frisé(e)
cute marrant(e), mignon(ne)

D

dad papa (*m*)
daily routine routine (*f*) quotidienne
dance danse (*f*)
to dance danser **1**

date date (*f*)
daughter fille (*f*)
daughter-in-law belle-fille (*f*)
day jour (*m*), journée (*f*)
dear cher (chère)
December décembre (*m*)
delicious délicieux (-euse)
delighted enchanté(e)
denim jean (*m*)
department (in store) rayon (*m*)
description description (*f*)
Design and Technology technologie
 (techno) (*f*)
desserts desserts (*mpl*)
to detest détester **1**
device appareil (*m*)
dictation (test) dictée (*f*)
dinner dîner (*m*)
dinner time heure (*f*) du dîner
dinosaur dinosaure (*m*)
to discover découvrir **3**
dish plat (*m*)
to do faire **3**
doctor médecin (*m*)
dog chien (*m*)
to download télécharger **1***
drama théâtre (*m*)
drawing dessin (*m*)
dress code code (*m*) vestimentaire
drinks boissons (*fpl*)
to drop off déposer **1**
during pendant

E

ear oreille (*f*)
easy facile
to eat manger **1***
to eat dinner dîner **1**
to eat lunch déjeuner **1**
egg œuf (*m*)
elephant éléphant (*m*)
employee employé (*m*), employée (*f*)
English anglais(e)
English (language) anglais (*m*)
English speaker anglophone
to enjoy oneself s'amuser **1^R**
enjoy your meal bon appétit
enough assez
entrée (first course) entrée (*f*)
especially surtout

evening soir (*m*)
everybody tout le monde
everywhere partout
exactly exactement
exchange échange (*m*)
to exchange échanger **1***
exercise book cahier (*m*)
expensive cher (chère)
eye œil (*m*)
eyes yeux (*mpl*)

F

face visage (*m*)
fake faux (fausse)
to fall tomber **1**
to fall apart craquer **1**
false faux (fausse)
family famille (*f*)
famous célèbre
far (from) loin (de)
farm ferme (*f*)
fashion mode (*f*)
father père (*m*), papa (*m*)
February février (*m*)
felt-tip pen feutre (*m*)
feminine féminin(e)
festival festival (*m*)
fête fête (*f*)
finally enfin
to find trouver **1**
to finish finir **2**, terminer **1**
finished fini(e)
fire station caserne (*f*) de pompiers
fireworks display feu (*m*) d'artifice
first premier (-ière)
first course (entrée) entrée (*f*)
first of all d'abord
fish poisson (*m*)
flea market marché (*m*) aux puces
floor étage (*f*)
flower fleur (*f*)
folder classeur (*m*)
following suivant(e)
foot pied (*m*)
football (soccer) foot (*m*)
football (soccer) field terrain (*m*) de foot
for pour
for example par exemple

forbidden interdit(e)
foreign étranger(-ère)
to forget oublier **1**
former ancien(ne)
fortunately heureusement
France France (*f*)
free libre
free of charge gratuit(e)
freedom liberté (*f*)
French français(e)
French (language) français (*m*)
French speaker francophone
Friday vendredi (*m*)
friend ami (*m*), amie (*f*); copain (*m*), copine (*f*) (*fam*)
friendly sympa (sympathique)
from de
from time to time de temps en temps
fruit fruits (*mpl*)
fruit, piece of fruit (*m*)
fruit juice jus (*m*) de fruits
full of light lumineux (-euse)
funny drôle, marrant(e)

G

garden jardin (*m*)
Geography géographie (géo) (*f*)
to get a tan se faire bronzer
to get dressed s'habiller **1^R**
to get up se lever **1^R**
giraffe girafe (*f*)
girl fille (*f*)
to give donner **1**
glasses (spectacles) lunettes (*fpl*)
to go aller **3**
to go camping faire **3** du camping
to go for a walk se promener **1^R**
to go kayaking faire **3** du kayak
to go sailing faire **3** de la voile
to go to bed se coucher **1^R**
goldfish poisson (*m*) rouge
good bon(ne)
good luck bonne chance
goodbye au revoir
gorilla gorille (*m*)
granddaughter petite-fille (*f*)
grandfather grand-père (*m*), papi (*m*) (*fam*)
grandmother grand-mère (*f*), mamie (*f*) (*fam*)

grandparents grands-parents (*mpl*)
grandson petit-fils (*m*)
grape harvest vendange (*f*)
grapes raisins (*mpl*)
graphic novel bande (*f*) dessinée
great formidable, génial(e)
green vert(e)
green beans haricots (*mpl*) verts
grey gris(e)
grocery shop épicerie (*f*)
to grow grandir **2**
guided visit visite (*f*) guidée
guitar guitare (*f*)

H

hair cheveux (*mpl*)
half demi(e)
half-length mi-long(ue)
ham jambon (*m*)
hand main (*f*)
handbag sac (*m*)
handsome beau (belle)
hard dur(e)
harvest récolte (*f*)
to have avoir **3**
he il
head tête (*f*)
headquarters sièges (*mpl*)
health santé (*f*)
heart cœur (*m*)
hello bonjour
to help aider **1**
her elle, la
her (possessive) son, sa, ses
here ici
hey tiens
hi salut
hike randonnée (*f*)
him lui, le
hippopotamus hippopotame (*m*)
his son, sa, ses
holidays vacances (*fpl*)
home town ville (*f*) natale
homework devoirs (*mpl*)
hopeless nul(le)
to hope espérer **1***
hors d'oeuvre hors d'œuvre (*m*)
horse cheval (*m*)
hospital hôpital (*m*)
hot (très) chaud(e)

hot chocolate (drink) chocolat (m)
chaud

hotel hôtel (m)

hour heure (f)

house maison (f)

how comment

how many, how much combien (de)

to hurry se dépêcher 1^R

husband époux (m)

I

I je

ice-cream glace (f)

idea idée (f)

ideal idéal(e)

if si

ill malade

immediately tout de suite

in à, dans, en

in captivity en captivité

in front of devant

in general en général

in the country à la campagne

in the heart of au cœur de

in the mountains à la montagne

in town en ville

instead of au lieu de

intelligent intelligent(e)

to interest intéresser 1

to introduce présenter 1

isn't it n'est-ce pas

it ce (cet, cette)

it is c'est

Italian italien(ne)

J

jacket (short) blouson (m), (hip-length)
veste (f)

jam confiture (f)

January janvier (m)

jealous jaloux (-ouse)

jeans jean (m)

to joke plaisanter 1

jug carafe (f)

July juillet (m)

July juillet (m)

jumper pull (m)

junior secondary school collègue (m)

K

kangaroo kangourou (m)

to keep warm tenir 3 chaud

keeper gardien (m), gardienne (f)

kind gentil(le)

king roi (m)

kitchen cuisine (f)

knee genou (m)

to know someone connaître 3

L

laboratory laboratoire (labo) (m)

laptop computer ordinateur (m)
portable

last dernier (-ière)

late note billet (m) de retard

later plus tard

to learn apprendre 3

leather cuir (m)

to leave partir 3, quitter 1

left (direction) gauche (f)

(to the) left à gauche

leg jambe (f)

leisure activities loisirs (mpl)

less moins

lesson leçon (f)

level étage (f)

life vie (f)

light (not heavy) léger (-ère)

like comme

lion lion (m)

to listen (to) écouter 1

literature littérature (f)

(a) little (un) peu

to live habiter 1

living room salle (f) de séjour, salon
(m)

lodging hébergement (m)

long long(ue)

look tiens

to look at regarder 1

to look for chercher 1

to look like (a snob) avoir 3 l'air
(snob)

a lot (of) beaucoup (de)

love amour (m)

to love aimer 1

luckily heureusement

lunch déjeuner (m)

M

madam madame (f) (mesdames fpl)

main dish plat (m) principal

to maintain (keep) maintenir 2

to make faire 3

to make (unpleasant) comments
faire des remarques

to manufacture fabriquer 1

many beaucoup (de)

map carte (f), plan (m)

March mars (m)

mark note (f)

market marché (m)

marvellous merveilleux (-euse)

masculine masculin(e)

mask masque (m)

maths mathématiques (fpl)

May mai (m)

me moi

media arts (mpl) médiatiques

to meet rencontrer 1

meeting rendez-vous (m)

metro métro (m)

midday midi

milk lait (m)

mime arts mime (m)

mineral water eau (f) minérale

mint tea thé (m) à la menthe

miss mademoiselle (f)
(mesdemoiselles fpl)

mobile phone smartphone (m),
portable (m), téléphone (m) portable

model modèle (m)

Monday lundi (m)

monkey singe (m)

month mois (m)

more plus

more and more de plus en plus

morning matin (m)

Moroccan marocain(e)

mother mère (f), maman (f)

mother tongue langue (f) maternelle

motor cyclist motard (m), motarde (f)

mountain montagne (f)

mouth bouche (f)

Mr M. (Monsieur)

Mrs Mme (Madame)

mum maman (f)

museum musée (m)

music musique (f)

mute muet(te)

my mon, ma, mes
mystery mystère (m)

N

name nom (m)
narrow étroit(e)
nasty méchant(e)
nature nature (f)
natural habitat habitat (m) naturel
Natural Science sciences (fpl) de la vie et de la terre (SVT)
near (to) près (de)
neck cou (m)
to negotiate négocier 1
neighbourhood quartier (m)
nephew neveu (m)
never jamais
new nouveau (-elle), neuf (neuve)
New Caledonia Nouvelle-Calédonie (f)
New Caledonian néo-calédonien(ne)
New Zealand Nouvelle-Zélande (f)
(from) New Zealand néo-zélandais(e)
New Year's Day jour (m) de l'An
to nibble grignoter 1
nice gentil(le), sympa (sympathique)
niece nièce (f)
night nuit (f)
night club disco(thèque) (f), boîte (f) (fam)
no non
no doubt sans doute
noon midi
normally normalement
nose nez (m)
not ne... pas
note (music) note (f)
notebook cahier (m)
notice annonce (f)
novel roman (m)
November novembre (m)
now maintenant
number numéro (m)

O

object objet (m)
October octobre (m)
of de

of course bien sûr
offer offre (f)
to offer proposer 1
often souvent
OK d'accord
old vieux (vieille)
on sur
on sale en solde
on the corner of à l'angle de
on the other hand par contre
one-way (street) sens unique (m)
only seulement
only child enfant (m, f) unique
opposite en face de
or ou
oral test interrogation (interro) (f), contrôle (m) oral
orchestra orchestre (m)
to order commander 1
other autre
otherwise sinon
our notre, nos
over there là-bas
overseas à l'étranger
owner propriétaire (m/f)

P

page binder classeur (m)
painful pénible
painting peinture (f)
pancake crêpe (f)
paper papier (m)
parents parents (mpl)
park parc (m)
parka parka (f)
parrot perroquet (m)
(farmhouse) pâté pâté (m) (de campagne)
to pay payer 1
pasta pâtes (fpl)
pen (ballpoint) stylo-bille (m), (felt-tip) feutre (m)
pencil crayon (m)
pencil case trousse (f)
penfriend correspondant (m), correspondante (f)
perfect parfait(e)
perhaps peut-être
pet animal (m) de compagnie
petanque (French bowls) pétanque (f)

photo photo (f)
photography photographie (f)
Physical Education éducation (f) physique et sportive (EPS)
Physics physique (f)
piece morceau (m)
pink rose
place endroit (m)
plan plan (m), projet (m)
plane avion (m)
plate assiette (f)
to play jouer 1
please s'il vous plaît
pleased content(e)
pluriel(le) plural
police station commissariat (m) de police
(in a) ponytail (en) queue (f) de cheval
poor pauvre
post office bureau (m) de poste, poste (f)
poster affiche (f)
potato pomme (f) de terre
potato salad salade (f) de pommes de terre
dauphinoise potatoes pommes dauphine
to prefer préférer 1*
to prepare oneself se préparer 1^R
prepared préparé(e)
present cadeau (m)
pretentious prétentieux (-euse)
problem problème (m)
prohibited interdit(e)
project projet (m)
to promote favoriser 1
pupil élève (mf)

Q

quality qualité (f)
(of, from) Quebec québécois(e)
question question (f)
quickly rapidement
quiet! chut !, silence !
quite assez

R

rabbit lapin (m)
radio radio (f)
to rain pleuvoir **3**
range gamme (f)
rarely rarement
rather assez
reading lecture (f)
ready préparé(e)
real vrai(e)
really vraiment
to recommend recommander **1**
recreation break récréation (récré) (f)
red rouge
red-haired roux (-sse)
redhead rouquin (m), rouquine (f)
to rehearse répéter **1***
to remember se souvenir **1^R** de
to repeat répéter **1***
resource centre centre (m) de documentation et d'information (CDI)
to rest se reposer **1^R**
result résultat (m)
to revise réviser **1**
rhythm rythme (m)
rice riz (m)
right (direction) droite (f)
(to the) right à droite
river fleuve (m)
room salle (f)
rooster coq (m)
rubber gomme (f)
rule règle (f)
ruler règle (f)

S

sad triste
sailing voile (f)
salad salade (f)
same même
sand sable (m)
Saturday samedi (m)
sausage (cured) saucisson (m)
to say dire **3**
scarf foulard (m)
school école (f)

school subjects matières (fpl)
sculpture sculpture (f)
sea mer (f)
seat place (f)
to see voir **3**
to see again revoir **3**
see you later à toute à l'heure
see you soon à bientôt
see you tomorrow à demain
self-catering cottage gîte (m) rural
to sell vendre **3**
seller vendeur (m), vendeuse (f)
senior secondary school lycée (m)
sensational sensationnel(le)
September septembre (m)
serious sérieux (-euse), grave
serving service (m)
shared partagé(e)
she elle
sheet of paper papier (m)
shirt chemise (f)
shoes chaussures (fpl)
shop magasin (m)
shop assistant vendeur (m), vendeuse (f)
shopping centre centre (m) commercial
short court(e)
shorts short (m)
to show montrer **1**
shy timide
sick malade
side dish garniture (f)
simply simplement
since depuis
to sing chanter **1**
single seul(e)
sister sœur (f)
sister-in-law belle-sœur (f)
size taille (f)
sketch dessin (m)
skiing ski (m)
skirt jupe (f)
sky ciel (m)
slim mince
small petit(e)
sneakers baskets (fpl)
snow neige (f)
so alors
Social Sciences histoire-géographie (histoire-géo) (f)
soft doux (douce)

solution solution (f)
some des
something quelque chose
sometimes quelquefois, parfois
son fils (m)
son-in-law beau-fils (m)
song chanson (f)
soon bientôt
sorry pardon, désolé(e)
soup soupe (f)
to speak parler **1**
to spend money dépenser **1** de l'argent
sport sport (m)
spring printemps (m)
stadium stade (m)
stall for drinks buvette (f)
to start commencer **3**
start of school year rentrée (f)
starter hors d'œuvre (m)
station gare (f)
stay séjour (m)
to stay rester **1**
steak and chips bifteck (m) frites
stolen volé(e)
stomach ventre (m)
to stop arrêter **1**
student étudiant (m), étudiante (f)
stupid bête
straight (hair) raide
straight ahead tout droit
street rue (f)
to succeed réussir **2**
to suggest suggérer **1***
suitcase valise (f)
summer été (m)
sun soleil (m)
sun umbrella parasol (m)
Sunday dimanche (m)
sunglasses lunettes (fpl) de soleil
superb superbe
supermarket supermarché (m)
sure sûr(e)
to surf faire **3** du surf
surfing surf (m)
surprise surprise (f)
swimming natation (f)
to go swimming se baigner **1^R**
swimming pool piscine (f)
Swiss suisse

T

T-shirt tee-shirt (m)
table table (f)
to take prendre **3**
to take by car emmener **1*** en voiture
tall grand(e)
to tap taper **1**
tapas bar bar (m) à tapas
tart tarte (f)
tattoo, tattooing tatouage (m)
tea thé (m)
teacher professeur (m, f), prof (m, f) (fam)
Technology technologie (techno) (f)
teeth dents (fpl)
tennis racket raquette (f)
test contrôle (m)
test paper copie (f)
textbook livre (m)
thank you merci
that ça
the le, la, l', les
theatre théâtre (m)
their leur, leurs
them eux, elles, les
then alors, puis
there là, y
there is, there are il y a, voilà
these ces
they ils, elles
thin mince
to think penser **1**
thousand mille
to throw lancer **1***
Thursday jeudi (m)
tight serré(e)
time temps (m), heure (f)
timetable emploi (m) du temps
tired fatigué(e)
tiresome insupportable
today aujourd'hui
together ensemble
tomorrow demain
tongue langue (f)
too (much) trop
too many people trop de monde
toucan toucan (m)
tourist office office (m) de tourisme
towards vers
town centre centre-ville (m)

town hall hôtel (m) de ville, mairie (f)
tranquil tranquille
trousers pantalon (m)
true vrai(e)
to try (on) essayer **1**
Tuesday mardi (m)
to turn tourner **1**
TV télé (f), télévision (f)

U

ugly laid(e), moche (fam)
unbeatable imbattable
uncle oncle (m)
under sous
underground train métro (m)
to understand comprendre **3**
unfortunately malheureusement
unwell malade
USB key clé (f) USB
usually normalement

V

vegetable légume (m)
vegetable soup soupe (f) aux légumes
vegetarian végétarien(ne)
very tout, très
video game jeu (m) vidéo
view vue (f)
village village (m)
to visit visiter **1**
visual arts arts (mpl) visuels

W

to wake up se réveiller **1^R**
walk promenade (f), randonnée (f)
wallet portefeuille (m)
warm chaud(e)
to watch regarder **1**
water eau (f)
water activity activité (f) aquatique/nautique
waterproof imperméable
to wear porter **1**
weather temps (m)

Wednesday mercredi (m)
week semaine (f)
weekend week-end (m)
welcome bienvenue
well bien

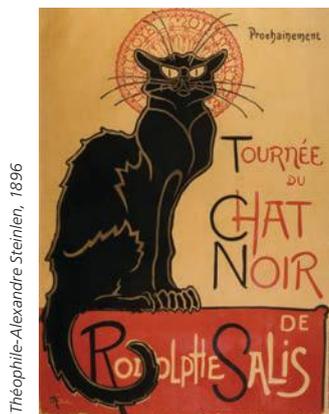
what que, quel(le), quoi
when quand
where où
which quel(le)
white blanc(he)
whiteboard tableau (m) blanc
who qui
whole entier(-ière)
why pourquoi
wife épouse (f)
wind vent (m)
windsurfing planche (f) à voile
wine (red, rosé, white) vin (m) (rouge, rosé, blanc)
winter hiver (m)
to wish souhaiter **1**
with avec
with pleasure volontiers
without sans
witness témoin (m)
words paroles (fpl)
work travail (m)
to work travailler **1**
workers travailleurs (mpl)
world monde (m)
world war guerre (f) mondiale
to write écrire **3**
wrong faux (fausse)

Y

year an (m), année (f)
yearly annuel(le)
yellow jaune
yes oui
yoghurt yaourt (m)
you tu, toi, vous
young jeune
your ton, ta, tes, votre, vos
you're welcome de rien
youth hostel auberge (f) de jeunesse

Z

zipped zippé(e)
zoo jardin (m) zoologique



Théophile-Alexandre Steinlen, 1896

The *Tapis Volant* black cat (*le chat noir*) travels around the French-speaking world on his flying carpet (his *tapis volant*). He is a modern version of the black cat that appeared in French artworks of the late 19th and early 20th centuries, including this famous poster.



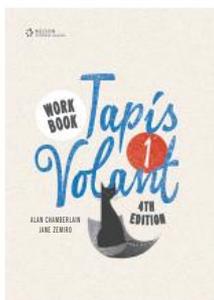
Tapis Volant is a market-leading French series for students in Years 7–10. This fourth edition retains many of the much-loved features of the previous editions, including:

- improved and updated content to address *The Australian Curriculum: French*
- a strong emphasis on cultural and intercultural teaching and learning, carefully integrated within a communicative approach
- opportunities that cater for a range of different learning styles and abilities.

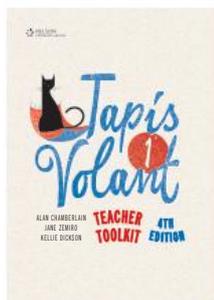
Tapis Volant 1 4th Edition Student Book contains 12 units, including *Mise au point* and *Vol de découverte* sections, fully supported by a range of print, digital and audio resources.



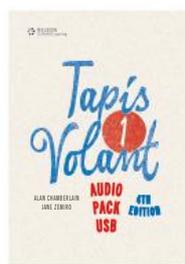
Tapis Volant 1 4e Student Book
9780170393720



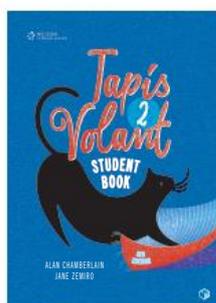
Tapis Volant 1 4e Workbook with USB
9780170393799



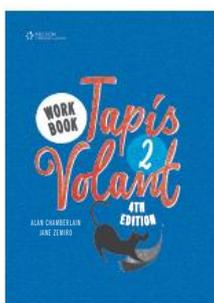
Tapis Volant 1 4e Teacher Toolkit with USB
9780170393911



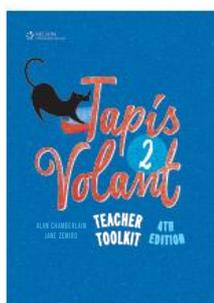
Tapis Volant 1 4e Audio Pack USB
9780170393935



Tapis Volant 2 4e Student Book
9780170393942



Tapis Volant 2 4e Workbook with USB
9780170394017



Tapis Volant 2 4e Teacher Toolkit with USB
9780170394024



Tapis Volant 2 4e Audio Pack USB
9780170394031